# IF YOU JUST CAN'T WAIT... 

## to hear the M5000 AUDIO MAINFRAME, we understand.

If you're not particularly familiar with this type of product please follow the directions below EXACTLY as given and get ready to hear some great sounding effects.
\#1 Make sure that the M5000 is unplugged, then patch the rear panel analog LEFT and RIGHT outputs to the inputs of a high quality amplification system. Turn the volume control on your amplifier fully counter clockwise.
\#2 Connect a high quality signal source, e.g. a CD-player, to the LEFT and RIGHT analog inputs.
\#3 Check that the rear panel voltage selector is set to the correct voltage in your part of the world (only older M5000 models) and plug the line cord into an AC outlet.
\#4 Turn the power on. The LCD display will read out the current software version. After a few seconds the relays will activate and the M5000 is ready.
\#5 The red LEDs in the device selector placed over the disk drive slot, will indicate which ADA-1, DSP-1 or DSP-2 is active. In order to get a clean distortion-free sound, the input levels must be set no higher than the yellow -3 dB LED on each channel just flickers with the maximum signal. The red light indicates DSP clipping ( -1 dB ). To set the input level refer to the "UTILITY HANDLING" module in the "GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS" section.
\#6 Now, turn up the volume and you should hear the excellent sound of the M5000 mixed with your source-signal. By turning the PROGRAM dial you can choose another factory program. To activate the new factory program, press the DO-button. Refer to "PROGRAM HANDLING" module in the "GENERAL INSTRUCTION" section.
\#7 After pressing the EDIT-button you can modify the current factory program just by turning the "soft dials" A to D. By pressing the PAGE-buttons forward or backward you gain access to all the parameter. You will find a detailed description of the parameters in the "BASIC ALGORITHM" section. Feel free to experiment with them. It is an easy and good way to learn.

By now you should be pretty impressed, but there's much more to come... so keep reading, trying and experimenting, and you'll soon be an expert. Don't hesitate to try out the "GUIDED TOURS" section - another easy way to learn the M5000.

## INTRODUCTION

This section contains an introduction to the mainframe concept as this idea may be new to some people in the audio business. It is also an introduction to this manual, which is built up in text modules in order to be updated easily. If you later receive a manual module, insert it in the right place and check the appropriate box. This section contains the following text modules:
$\downarrow$
THE MAINFRAME CONCEPT

HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

## THE M5000 MAINFRAME CONCEPT

## WHY A MAINFRAME ?

The purpose of the mainframe concept is the flexibility to keep up with the ever evolving state of technology. New inventions developed because of the advancing needs of professional engineers can be implemented in the mainframe without he need to scrap a valued piece of equipment. Furthermore, only one user interface is needed to control several modules, i.e. the front panel of the ATAC is controlling one module at the time, although all modules installed are active. (Shown on fig. 1 is M5000).


Fig. 1

## HARDWARE

The modules are installed in 4 slots placed on the rear panel. Each module is held in with only 2 screws which makes replacement of hardware for updates and upgrades very easy. Once placed into the slot the module is connected to a high speed $\mathbf{2 4}$ bit audio bus. 24 bit makes the M5000 well prepared for the future as 24 bit conversion is not likely to be exceeded for many years to come. The AD/DA converter features 18 bit resolution 64 times oversampling in, 20 bit out. The 24 bit audio bus features up to 64 audio channels which makes the M5000 "patchable" for almost any purpose (fig. 2).

## SOFTWARE

As the M5000 is totally software controlled it is essential that also the software is easily exchanged. New algorithms and programs will be available to you in different categories. Some of the programs will be created by other M5000 users and will be available as public domain software, i.e. users can share programs/sounds for free. Other programs and algorithms will be created by well known engineers and musicians. There is more information

[^0]on the User Registration Form which we highly recommend that you return to the nearest TC office or to the head office in Denmark.

New software will be available in 2 ways: Floppy Disk or Memory Card. Moreover, software can be loaded into the M5000 via MIDI from another M5000 or from a computer with a MIDI interface ( $\mathrm{IBM}^{\mathrm{mm}}$ compatible, Macintosh ${ }^{\mathrm{tm}}$ or Atarim${ }^{\mathrm{tm}}$ ). An electronic bulletin board has been established at TC's head office, so if you have a modem connected to your computer you can get the latest software and information on the M5000. Here you can download the necessary software for dumping software from your computer to the M5000. More on this in APPENDIX F.


Fig. 2

## FLOPPY DISK

The floppy disk is IBM $^{\text {tm }}$ compatible and can be copied on any IBM/clone PC. You can borrow a colleague's disk if he should have the latest software version and transfer this software into the permanent memory of the M5000. If your colleague has been charged for this software the M5000 will prompt you for a unique access code in order to install the software in your machine. As soon as you have the access code your M5000 will accept the new software installation. So, where do you get the access code? You call your dealer or TC. sales office and on basis of information provided by you (serial number, software type, payment method, etc.) this access code is generated. More information about this system will
be provided to registered M5000 owners as the first chargeable software updates become available.

## MEMORY CARD

Software updates may be installed just as easy using the memory card. The memory card is a credit card sized card which exists in many different types and capacities. The M5000 supports the JEIDA, PCMCIA type card, a world-wide portable computer standard.

A freelance engineer often works on different gear. In this situation it is easy to bring his own programs stored on the memory card and install them in the different M5000s without overwriting the existing programs. This is more thoroughly explained in the "PROGRAM HANDLING"-module in GENERAL INSTRUCTION SECTION.

## SOFT/HARDWARE FUTURE OPTIONS

When new software packages are released, they will allow the M5000 owners to listen and try these for a limited active time - free of charge, thus enabling the user to hear and try the new sounds on your own machine, before purchase!

New hardware modules are also planned in the future.

## GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS

This section contains description of the general functions and procedures for the mainframe, no matter what hardware or software configuration you have. As the user interface is the same for all algorithms installed the global parameters are described in this section. The section contains the following text modules:

PROGRAM HANDLING

DISK/CARD HANDLING
$\downarrow$
UTILITY HANDLING

## GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS

1. POWER SWITCH
2. DEVICE SELECTOR
3. LOAD LED

TIMECODE LED
MIDI IN LED
DIGITAL IN

LAN/SCSI
4. DISPLAY
5. ROM, RAM, FILE
6. PROGRAM NUMBER
7. LEVEL METER
8. DISK DRIVE

The main power On/Off switch.
Selects between the installed kits to be operated from the mainframe front panel controls. The LED's and labels correspond to the configured kits.
Lit while parameters/programs are being updated
Lit when receiving timecode
Lit when receiving MIDI
Lit when receiving at digital inputs and SAMRATE is locked

Lit when reading and writing data
80 character alphanumeric display. The top line is divided into 5 sections and tells which 4 parameters and which algorithm is currently being modified. The bottom line is dedicated to the five "soft dials" that are directly below it and displays the 4 parameter values and the program name.
ROM indicates that the factory program bank is selected for RECALL, STORE or PREVIEW. RAM indicates that the user program bank is selected. FILE indicates that programs relate to an external file on memory card or floppy disk.
Shows either the origin of the current setting or, if blinking, the current previewed program. If the current setting has been edited the small EDITED LED will be lit.

Dual 10 segment LED bargraph. Displays the input or output level on the DSP-module. Red light indicates DSP overload.

Disk drive for updating software and storage of programs. The M5000 can be updated with new algorithms through the disk drive.

$\left.\left.\left.\begin{array}{l}\text { 9. MEMORY CARD SLOT } \\ \text { 10. VIEWING ANGLE } \\ \text { 11. PAGE BUTTONS } \\ \text { 12. SOFT DIALS A, B, C, D } \\ \text { 13. PROGRAM DIAL } \\ \text { transfer of "personal" programs from one M5000 to } \\ \text { another very easy by means of the "credit card"-like } \\ \text { memory card. } \\ \text { Makes the alphanumeric display readable at almost } \\ \text { any angle. } \\ \text { As there are more parameters to edit than possible to } \\ \text { show at the same time the page buttons scrolls } \\ \text { through the parameters on the display. }\end{array}\right\} \begin{array}{l}\text { Used for editing the parameter values on the display } \\ \text { just above. }\end{array}\right\} \begin{array}{l}\text { Turn this dial to preview the programs. Also used } \\ \text { when recalling, storing and renaming programs. The } \\ \text { top line on the display shows the current algorithm } \\ \text { type. The bottom line shows the name of the } \\ \text { program. }\end{array}\right\}$


| 19. MODULE SLOTS | This is where the M5000 module cards are installed. <br> With four module slots the M5000 frame can house <br> for example 4 full stereo reverbs modules with <br> digital I/Os. |
| :--- | :--- |
| 20. OPTION | Future OPTION such as SCSI, PCMCIA and other <br> future expansions may be configured to this port. |
| 21. GROUNDLIFT | In position OFF : Direct connection from internal <br> ground to chassis. In position ON : Internal ground <br> connection to chassis trough a capacitor. Also called <br> 'flying chassis'. <br> Connector for AC power cord. 3 prong IEC type. |
| 22. AC CONNECTOR | The center post is chassis ground. Input voltage : <br> 100-240 Vac, 50-60 Hz. |
| 23. SMPTE INPUT | Enables the M5000 to make program changes and <br> other pre-programmed functions as it is <br>  |
| 24PTE" section for more information. |  |
| 25. MIDI CONNECTORS | MIDI data can be read and generated from these <br> connectors. MIDI THRU sends a duplicate copy of <br> the data received at MIDI IN. |
| 26. PEDAL CONNECTOR | Connects to the ATAC remote controller. The port <br> communicates with the remote through bi- <br> directional serial data transmission. |
| 2sed for a simple external switch. The function of |  |

## Concept

The M5000 handles 3 different program sources: ROM, RAM and FILE (fig. 1).


Fig. 1

ROM In ROM (Read Only Memory) you will find the factory programs. Along with the basic operating software there are factory programs implemented and they can not be overwritten, i.e. programs can not be stored back in ROM. The factory programs will increase as TC DSP programmers are continuously working on new programs. In the future these programs will be available either free of charge or for a moderate fee.
RAM In RAM (Random Access Memory) you are able to store an edited program, i.e. here you will find the so-called user programs. This is also where you can build up your own bank of maximum 100 user programs for instant recall. A long life lithium battery keeps these programs in RAM after power down.

FILE The FILE buffer is where programs are loaded from and stored to external devices. External devices can be either floppy disk or memory card. As in RAM the programs loaded into the FILE buffer can be recalled, edited and then stored again. One main difference from RAM is that programs in the FILE buffer are not backed up by battery and therefore will be lost after a power down. Before power down the FILE buffer must be saved to either floppy disk or memory card if you want to keep your presets. You may also copy the FILE buffer in to RAM, overwriting the existing presets.

When a program is recalled - either selected from ROM, RAM or FILE with the source selector ( $\mathbf{1 6 A}$, in program mode) - it is copied in to a working memory. Here a program can be edited and it is referred to as the "current setting". This means that it is the current program setting, which is displayed on the alpha-numeric display (4). The current setting is - as RAM also backed up by battery and will remain in working memory after power down. A small LED in front of the program number in the PROGRAM NUMBER display (6) will indicate where the current program is copied from. As soon as the current setting is edited the small EDITED LED in the PROGRAM NUMBER display (6) will light up. When you wish to store the new edited program you have different options to choose from. You can store it in RAM or FILE and overwrite the original recalled program or you can rename it - creating a new program. Storage means that the current setting in the working memory is copied into either RAM or FILE buffer. All programs can instantly be copied to and from RAM and FILE buffer (fig. 2).


Fig. 2

The purpose of the FILE buffer is that it enables a freelance engineer to bring his own programs on a floppy disk or his "personal" memory card and load them into the FILE buffer without overwriting the M5000's existing RAM programs. He will always know exactly what he is working with as he is familiar with his own programs and doesn't have to look for appropriate programs in RAM. Another use is to stack user modified programs in the FILE buffer for certain recording projects and then save it on a disk dedicated to the specific project. The disk can then be stored with the multitrack tape, sequence disk etc. For a later remix situation the programs can instantly be recalled along with the dedicated sequencer song and sample library.

## PROGRAM PARAMETERS:

Pressing the PROGRAM button (15) makes the following parameters appear on the display (4):

[^1]M5GENIN
Rev 1.0 Page 8

## PAGE 1 PARAMETERS: RECALL AND STORAGE OF PROGRAMS

| CONTROL | TOP LINE | BOTTOM LINE | DEF. VALUE |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| SOFT DIAL A: | SOURCE SELECTOR | ROM, RAM, FILE | ROM |
| SOFT DIAL D: | MODE | RECALL, STORE | RECALL |
| PROGRAM DIAL: | ALGORITHM NAME | PROGRAM NAME | - |

## PAGE 2 PARAMETERS: CREATE AND RENAME PROGRAM

On the bottom line - over the PROGRAM DIAL (13) - the name of the last recalled program is displayed. If the EDITED LED in PROGRAM NUMBER display (6) is lit this program has been edited and is altered from the original. The edited program can be stored as it is, overwriting the original program under the same name, or stored in another program location in either RAM or FILE. The program can be renamed on page 2. The name of the current program is changed (in either RAM or FILE), not only the name of the current setting. The procedure will not affect the sound.

On the top line the original program name is displayed with a cursor under the first character ready for editing.

| SOFT DIAL A: | CURSOR | Moves the cursor forward or backwards <br> through the name. The name can have a <br> maximum of 8 characters. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| SOFT DIAL B: | LETTERS | Selects a letter from A to z and inserts it <br> in the name over the cursor. |
| SOFT DIAL C: | FIGURES | As letters but numerical from 0 to 9. |
| SOFT DIAL D: | SYMBOLS | Inserts symbols instead of characters, <br> e.g. blank or space is a symbol found <br> here. |
| PROGRAM DIAL: | PROGRAM NAME | Shows the original program name. |
| (Press DO to confirm program change/rename) |  |  |

## PAGE 3 PARAMETERS: FILE BUFFER HANDLING

Before any FILE buffer handling is possible one must be created. On page 3, turn soft dial A until "New" occurs. Press the DO button and you have created an empty FILE buffer. You can also simply go directly to Load either Disk or Card. The following parameters are accessible with soft dial A after a File buffer has been created:

| New | Creates a new FILE buffer. |
| :--- | :--- |
| Ram To File | Copies all RAM programs to FILE buffer. |


| Load Disk | Loads programs from floppy disk into the FILE buffer. |
| :--- | :--- |
| Load Card | Loads programs from memory card into the FILE buffer. |
| Save Disk, Save Card | Saves existing programs in FILE buffer on either floppy disk or <br> memory card. Press DO and a new page will appear. It enables <br> you to create or rename a file. File names are edited as program <br> names. Program dial selects the saving destination, i.e. floppy <br> disk or memory card. |
| File To Ram | Copies the whole FILE buffer to RAM. Existing RAM <br> programs will be overwritten. Confirm by pressing the DO <br> button. |

## COMPARE A PROGRAM (UNDO-button)

In order to be able to compare program changes to the original program TC has implemented this A/B-test feature. As mentioned before once the current program setting has been changed from the original program, the small EDITED-LED in the PROGRAM NUMBER display will lit. By pressing the DO-button once, the original program will be loaded again and the EDITED-LED is off. Press the UNDO-button and the previous changed setting is recovered. Switch between original and changed program settings by pressing respectively DO- and the UNDO-button.

## UTILITY HANDLING

The following parameters appears when pressing the UTILITY button (17). The PROGRAM dial (13) selects the menus.

PROGRAM DIAL: MENU

## I/O MENU:

PAGE 1:
SOFT DIAL A:
I/O
Selects different input and output configurations. See the following examples:


FIG. 1. A/A\&D: Analog input and both analog and digital output.


FIG. 2. D/A\&D: Digital input and both analog and digital output.


FIG. 3. AD D/A: Analog in and unprocessed digital out simultaneously with digital in and processed signal analog out.
This may be used as a converter mode, where you convert from A to D (unprocessed digital out) and also from D to A (analog processed signal out) simultaneously and independent. You can use this mode for various purposes. An example is to use the M5000 as an AD converter and connect the house clock to the digital input on the M5000. Another possibility is to use more than one DSP-1 in a serial connection (FIG. 4).


FIG. 4. M5000 as a multieffect unit.
Another example is if you work with a digital storing media and want to record a guitar while you are listening to some other tracks and also on the same time want reverb on these tracks. You can then connect your guitar setup to the analog input on the M5000. From the digital output you connect to the digital input on your DAT/ hard disk (FIG. 5).

[^2]M5GENIN
Rev 1.0 Page 12


FIG. 5. Digital storing media for instruments.
The guitar signal will be converted for storing on your DAT. At the same time the M5000 can process and convert the tracks selected from your DAT from digital to analog. (You have to connect the digital out from your DAT to the digital in on your M5000).


FIG. 6 D/D: Digital input and digital output.
In this mode the M5000 works locally on the DSP-1 card and therefor does not use the bus, which means that you can use a different clock than the one the bus is using.

INSERT
In the TOOLBOX ${ }^{\mathrm{TM}}$ algorithm you have the opportunity to insert a second DSP engine internally in the M5000 frame in order to have 2 DSP engines connected into one system (see TOOLBOX ${ }^{\mathrm{TM}}$ algorithm description in the BASIC ALGORITHM section). When you are running the TOOLBOX ${ }^{\mathrm{TM}}$ on one DSP you can for example run the DYNAMIC1 algorithm on a second DSP engine. The I/O mode on the DSP engine that runs the TOOLBOX ${ }^{\text {TM }}$ can be set as normal (see the above options). The second DSP must be set to INSERT in order for the DSP to know where to get its signal.

## SOFT DIAL B: M-CLOCK

Selection of the master clock. Determines the working speed on the bus. This also means that it is a global parameter that works for all the devices mounted in the frame, except for the devices set to D/D I/O. These devices work locally and can have a work clock different to the one used by the bus.

M5K44.1 \& M5K48.0

DIN-1, DIN-2,
DIN-3, DIN-4

SOFT DIAL C:

SOFT DIAL D:

PAGE 2:
SOFT DIAL A: DO-TYPE* S/PDIF, AES/EBU

DO-CPY* on, off

SOFT DIAL B

This selects the clock that the M5000 works with internally. This clock also functions as the house clock in a digital system (this is of course only if you have DSP-1 with digital I/O.) E.g. if you are working with a system that does not generate a master clock - use either the M5K44.1 or the M5K48.0 setting to make the M5000 generate one of these clocks ( 44.1 KHz . or 48.0 KHz .) to use as the house clock in your system.

The M5000 locks on the sample rate from the signal received in either digital input number 1 , 2,3 or 4 according to your selection. DIN-1 corresponds to digital input no. one, DIN-2 to digital input no. 2 and so on. The numbers available depend on the amount of DSP-1s mounted in the frame. If you have one DSP-1 card in your frame you can only select the DIN-1 setting.

This is an read only indicator. It means that you can not change anything, but only read the sample rate on the display.
This indicator shows the sample rate for the device you have selected to operate.
(LCL) after the number means that the device is operating locally and have no contact with the bus (only possible in $\mathrm{D} / \mathrm{D}$ mode). If the device selected needs to work with the bus (all I/O settings except $\mathrm{D} / \mathrm{D}$ ) the number will correspond to the master clock in the M5000.

Input source. Selects between a stereo or mono input signal.

Determines the digital out type, regardless of the input source used.

Copy protection on/off. The M5000 can remove the copy prohibit bit that is present in the S/PDIF format ( $\mathrm{DO}-\mathrm{CPY}=\mathbf{o n}$ ). This means that you can edit your DAT recordings in the S/PDIF format more than once. If DO-copy is off the M5000 adds the copy prohibit bit to the digital output.

[^3][^4]M5GENIN
Rev 1.0 Page 14

## G-LEVELS MENU:

When an ADA-1 is installed in the M5000, audio levels must be adjusted in order to get a clean distortion-free sound. Once analog inputs and outputs are connected, levels can be set. The output level can be adjusted to provide levels that matches your console or other audio system. Once a digital signal has been recorded it is often hard to adjust the digital level. In this menu it is possible to attenuate the digital signal, digital gain is available only in the optional MD2 algorithim.

## PAGE 1:

SOFT DIAL A:
SOFT DIAL B:
SOFT DIAL C:
SOFT DIAL D:

A-IN
A-OUT
D-IN
MIXMODE
$-12 d B$ to $+12 d B$
-18 dB to +12 dB
off - 0.0 dB
WET+DRY, WET=MAX and WET=MIX

As all factory programs are programmed with a mixed signal between dry and wet signal for musical instruments (WET+DRY) TC has implemented this feature. When MIXMODE is set to WET=MAX, it automatically sets the mix level on $100 \%$ meaning that no dry signal is coming through to the effect output. Set MIXMODE
WET=MAX and all direct signals are "killed" regardless of preset mix settings. This application simplifies the use of the M5000 when it is used with mixing consoles. WET=MIX means that the dry signal is killed, but the programmed MIX percentage remains unchanged from the original.

## PAGE 2:

| DA-DEMP | none, $48 \mathrm{KHz}, 44.1 \mathrm{KHz}, 32 \mathrm{KHz}$ | Digital to analog de-emphasis. If you need to deemphase a pre-emphased signal, choose the proper samplerate. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ABSPHAS | neg, pos | With this parameter the absolute phase of the output signals can be inverted. It affects both the analog and digital output signals. |
| R68-LEV | off, on | When set to on the headroom on analog inputs and outputs are changed to 18 dB according to the EBU TECHNICAL RECOMMENDATION R68-1992. |
| FST.TRG | off, on | When fast trigger chip is mounted this should be set to on. |

## MIDI MENU:

For more information about the MIDI menu, please refer to the text module "INTRODUCTION TO MIDI OPERATION" in the MIDI \& SMPTE section.

## METERS MENU:

Turning the PROGRAM dial to the METERS menu enables you to choose whether you want the meter to display digital input or digital output level. Note that the meters (7) always displays the digital levels (in/out of the DSP module). Set the input level so that the green -3 dB LED on each channel just flickers at peak levels. The red 0 dB LED will light up when DSP input is overloaded - even if output level meter is selected.

## FILE MENU:

When storing programs on either floppy disk or memory card eventually the disk or card will be full. In the FILE MENU it is possible to view and erase files stored on either disk or memory card.

Entering the FILE MENU the display will show $\ll$ FILE PRESS DO>>. Use soft dial A and press DO to select the following functions:

CARD DIRECTORY Scrolls through the files on the PCMCIA memory card. Views not only program files but also application software files. Press DO or UNDO to return.
CARD DELETE FILE Scrolls through the files on memory card. Views all files placed on the card. Press DO to erase selected file or UNDO to abort this function. Confirm by pressing DO a second time or press UNDO again to cancel.

CARD FORMAT Memory card formatting. Press DO and select card size with soft dial A. Confirm by pressing DO once again.
DISK DIRECTORY Scrolls through the files on disk. Views not only program files but also application software files. Press DO or UNDO to return.
DISK DELETE FILE Scrolls through the files on disk. Views all files placed on the disk. Press DO to erase selected file or UNDO to abort this function. Confirm by pressing DO a second time or press UNDO again to cancel.

DISK FORMAT Disk formatting. Press DO and select disk size with soft dial A. Confirm by pressing DO a second time or press UNDO again to cancel.

## PEDAL MENU:

It is possible to remote bypass the M5000 with an external switch. Connect your pedal/switch to the pedal connector (26) and use the soft dial A to configure the M5000 to your switch.

SOFT DIAL A:
NONE, BYPASS WHEN TOGGLE, BYPASS WHEN PUSHED, BYPASS WHEN RELEASED.

[^5]M5GENIN
Rev 1.0 Page 16

## CONFIGURATION MENU:

Use DIAL A to select the different options:

## SHOW CONFIG (Press DO):

This menu shows (read only) the module configuration for the selected device, the size of the index ram (IDX= ), and the size of the DRAM (extra memory for sampling).

IDX $=\quad$| The index ram can be either 32 K (standard) or 64 K. . If you mount a HIMEM kit |
| :--- |
| (64K) it will give your DSP card more memory, thus providing longer delay / pre |
| delay times in some of the algorithms. Exactly where and how much is described |
| under the respective algorithms. |

DRAM | Shows how much dynamic RAM (for sampling) is mounted. |
| :--- |

## M5000 OPTION (Press DO to view):

Dialing forward you will find all the options available using this software version. If the option you selected is not installed, the display will appear as follows:

| OPTION | TIME | LEVEL |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| (Option name) | -- | off |

Beneath 'OPTION' you see the option names. These options can be installed in 2 ways; PERMANENTLY or TEMPORARY, i.e. for a limited number of hours. All options purchased are of course installed permanently, but we invite you to try an option free of charge for a limited time period, usually 100 hours. The installation procedure is described in CONFIGURATION section, OPTION INSTALLATION. Please refer to this text module for information about how to order a temporary demo option. The LEVEL parameter describes how many DSP cards in the frame that can run the option simultaneously.
On temporary installations 'TIME' describes the number of hours the option is still available. On permanently (purchased) installed options the time limit will of course be 'forever'.

## SMPTE MENU:

For more information about the SMPTE menu, please refer to the text module "SMPTE OPERATION" in the MIDI \& SMPTE section.

## THE BASIC ALGORITHMS

Top DSP programmers around the world are working on enhancements to the basic algorithms and are developing new algorithms to achieve a wide range of extraordinary applications.
The M5000 will be up to date for many years as new software packages and hardware modules are developed. The possibilities are virtually unlimited as the M5000 can be configured in many variations for optimal performance for Recording, Broadcasting and Sound Reinforcement.

This section will explain the algorithms that come with the software version 2.0 They are as follows:

| ROM PRESETS: |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| REVERB-1 | DELAY-2 |
| REVERB-2 | SAMPLE-1 |
| REVERB-3 | AMBIENCE |
| NONLIN-1 | TAPFAC |
| CHORUS-1 | PARAM.EQ |
| REVPITCH | REVCORE-1 |
| PITCH-1 | DYNAMIC1 |
| PITCH-2 | TOOLBOX |
| DELAY-1 |  |

On the next page you will find a complete signal flow diagram for the M5000. It shows where the adjustable parameters are placed in relation to the actual algorithm signal flow. The "APPLICATION" box in the middle of the diagram is blank as the text module for each algorithm contains a separate diagram unique to that specific algorithm.
If you receive an update on one of these algorithms in the future you will also receive a new revision of the text module in this manual related to the specific algorithm. Remove the old text module and insert the new one in its place. The latest revision number is marked at the lower right corner of each page with the section name and the module name.

## REVERB-1

Here is a brief description of the parameters dedicated to the REVERB-1 algorithm. The diagram below is an addition to the signal flow diagram found in the "BASIC
ALGORITHMS" module, page 2.


## EDIT PARAMETERS:

MIX

$$
0-100 \%
$$

INLEV off - 0.0 dB .

Sets the mix between dry and wet signal. $100 \%=$ effect signal only. Mix can be set to $100 \%$ globally in the G-LEVELSmenu under UTILITY. Set MIXMODE $\mathbf{W E T}=\mathbf{M A X}$ and all dry signals are "killed" regardless of preset mix settings.
Sets the level of the input to the reverb in 0.5 dB steps. The function of the control is to maximize dynamic range. Please note that this control is positioned after the input PPM meter, and will not affect the input PPM reading, also if using an analog input, make the analog input adjustment in the G-LEVELS-menu under UTIL before setting this control. However, if the red overload LED flashes, turn down INLEV a couple of dBs. The control does not affect the bypassed signal level. Normally, you do
\(\left.$$
\begin{array}{ll}\text { OUTLEV } & \text { OFF }-0.0 \mathrm{~dB} . \\
\begin{array}{l}\text { Sets the output level of the reverb in } 0.5 \\
\text { dB steps. The function of this control is } \\
\text { to maximize dynamic range by allowing } \\
\text { the reverb algorithm to output maximum } \\
\text { signal to the DA converters. It affects the } \\
\text { output PPM reading. There is a separate } \\
\text { output level control for adjusting the } \\
\text { analog output level in UTIL. Set the } \\
\text { analog input (if you use analog input) } \\
\text { and the INLEV adjustments before } \\
\text { setting OUTLEV. The control does not } \\
\text { affect the bypassed signal level. } \\
\text { Normally, you do not have to change the }\end{array}
$$ <br>

factory default setting.\end{array}\right\}\)| Reverberation decay time. |
| :--- |
| DECAY |
| x LOW |
| x HIGH |
| frequencies. |

ALGORITHMS
M5ALGOIN
Rev 1.7 Page 3
t.c. electronic
box shaped Hall. Finally the Horseshoe shape pattern is based on the Musikvereinssaal, Austria. Table 1 shows the actual sizes for the rooms simulated.

| M5000 REVERB-1 \& 2 algorithms |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | For the HALL pattern: |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | suggested | suggested |
| SIZE |  | HALL | FAN | PRISM | H.SHOE | CLUB * | SMALL * | LENGTH | initial delay | revfeed |
| scale | factor | m3 | m3 | m3 | m3 | m3 | m3 | m | mS | mS |
| 4.000 | 64 | 1280000 | 640000 | 1024000 | 896000 | 320000 | 128000 | 153.8 | 223.60 | 74.53 |
| 3.160 | 32 | 640000 | 320000 | 512000 | 448000 | 160000 | 64000 | 122.1 | 177.48 | 59.16 |
| 2.500 | 16 | 320000 | 160000 | 256000 | 224000 | 80000 | 32000 | 96.9 | 140.86 | 46.95 |
| 2.000 | 8 | 160000 | 80000 | 128000 | 112000 | 40000 | 16000 | 76.9 | 111.80 | 37.27 |
| 1.600 | 4 | 80000 | 40000 | 64000 | 56000 | 20000 | 8000 | 61.1 | 88.74 | 29.58 |
| 1.250 | 2 | 40000 | 20000 | 32000 | 28000 | 10000 | 4000 | 48.5 | 70.43 | 23.48 |
| 1.000 | 1 | 20000 | 10000 | 16000 | 14000 | 5000 | 2000 | 38.5 | 55.90 | 18.63 |
| 0.800 | 0.5 | 10000 | 5000 | 8000 | 7000 | 2500 | 1000 | 30.5 | 44.37 | 14.79 |
| 0.630 | 0.25 | 5000 | 2500 | 4000 | 3500 | 1250 | 500 | 24.2 | 35.22 | 11.74 |
| 0.500 | 0.125 | 2500 | 1250 | 2000 | 1750 | 625 | 250 | 19.2 | 27.95 | 9.32 |
| 0.400 | 0.0625 | 1250 | 625 | 1000 | 875 | 313 | 125 | 15.3 | 22.18 | 7.39 |
| 0.316 | 0.03125 | 625 | 312 | 500 | 437 | 156 | 62 | 12.1 | 17.61 | 5.87 |
| 0.250 | 0.01563 | 313 | 156 | 250 | 219 | 78 | 31 | 9.6 | 13.98 | 4.66 |
| 0.200 | 0.00781 | 156 | 78 | 125 | 109 | 39 | 16 | 7.6 | 11.09 | 3.70 |
| 0.160 | 0.00391 | 78 | 39 | 62 | 55 | 20 | 8 | 6.1 | 8.80 | 2.93 |
| 0.125 | 0.00195 | 39 | 20 | 31 | 27 | 10 | 4 | 4.8 | 6.99 | 2.33 |
| 0.100 | 0.00098 | 20 | 10 | 16 | 14 | 5 | 2 | 3.8 | 5.55 | 1.85 |
| 0.080 | 0.00049 | 9.8 | 4.9 | 7.8 | 6.8 | 2 | 1 | 3.0 | 4.40 | 1.47 |
| 0.063 | 0.00024 | 4.9 | 2.4 | 3.9 | 3.4 | 1 | 0.5 | 2.4 | 3.49 | 1.16 |
| 0.050 | 0.00012 | 2.4 | 1.2 | 2.0 | 1.7 | 1 | 0.2 | 1.9 | 2.77 | 0.92 |
| 0.040 | 0.00006 | 1.2 | 0.6 | 1.0 | 0.9 | 0.3 | 0.1 | 1.5 | 2.20 | 0.73 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| *) only in Reverb-2 algoritm |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

table 1.
x SIZE

PREDLY
$0.0-200.0 \mathrm{mS}$ or $0.0-520.0 \mathrm{mS}^{1}$

Scales the dimensions of the simulated space depending on the SHAPE chosen. The specific room that is being simulated is scaled $1: 1$ at $\operatorname{SIZE}=1.00$. This can then be scaled up or down (see table 1). Provided that the predelay setting is relatively short, the corresponding volume of the simulated space is changed radically with this control. For example; with the HALL initial pattern, the approximate room volume goes from 1.2 cubic meters to $1,280,000$ cubic meters (table 1).

Sets the time that passes before the first reflection appear. Maximum predelay depends on SHAPE (see table 2).

[^6]
## ALGORITHMS <br> M5ALGOIN

Rev 1.4 Page 4

Increasing the predelay will change the apparent position and, to some degree, the size of the room.

| Max predelay before loosing taps (std. memory) |  |  |  |  | Size | mS |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| @48KHz samplerate |  | mS |  |  |  |  |
|  | Size |  | Size | mS |  |  |
| Hall | 0.50 | 112.4 | 1 | 40.7 | 1.28 | 0.0 |
| Fan | 0.50 | 146.8 | 1 | 109.5 | 2.47 | 0.0 |
| Prism | 0.50 | 135.4 | 1 | 86.7 | 1.89 | 0.0 |
| H.Shoe | 0.50 | 116.2 | 1 | 48.3 | 1.36 | 0.0 |
| Club | 0.50 | 133.4 | 1 | 82.7 | 1.81 | 0.0 |
| Small | 0.50 | 141.2 | 1 | 98.2 | 2.14 | 0.0 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| @44.1KHz samplerate |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | Size | mS | Size | mS | Size | mS |
| Hall | 0.50 | 118.2 | 1 | 52.3 | 1.40 | 0.0 |
| Fan | 0.50 | 149.8 | 1 | 115.5 | 2.69 | 0.0 |
| Prism | 0.50 | 139.4 | 1 | 94.6 | 2.06 | 0.0 |
| H.Shoe | 0.50 | 121.7 | 1 | 59.3 | 1.48 | 0.0 |
| Club | 0.50 | 137.5 | 1 | 90.9 | 1.98 | 0.0 |
| Small | 0.50 | 144.7 | 1 | 105.2 | 2.33 | 0.0 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Max predelay before loosing taps (w.option 'himem' memory, order\# 5IRAM-1) |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| @48KHz samplerate |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | Size | mS | Size | mS | Size | mS |
| Hall | 0.50 | 459.5 | 1 | 393.6 | 4.00 | 0.0 |
| Fan | 0.50 | 491.2 | 1 | 456.9 | 4.00 | 251.2 |
| Prism | 0.50 | 480.7 | 1 | 436.0 | 4.00 | 167.6 |
| H.Shoe | 0.50 | 463.0 | 1 | 400.6 | 4.00 | 26.2 |
| Club | 0.50 | 478.8 | 1 | 432.2 | 4.00 | 152.7 |
| Small | 0.50 | 486.0 | 1 | 446.6 | 4.00 | 209.9 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| @44.1KHz samplerate |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | Size | mS | Size | mS | Size | mS |
| Hall | 0.50 | 500.2 | 1 | 428.5 | 4.00 | 0.0 |
| Fan | 0.50 | 534.6 | 1 | 497.3 | 4.00 | 273.4 |
| Prism | 0.50 | 523.2 | 1 | 474.5 | 4.00 | 182.4 |
| H.Shoe | 0.50 | 504.0 | 1 | 436.1 | 4.00 | 28.6 |
| Club | 0.50 | 521.2 | 1 | 470.5 | 4.00 | 166.2 |
| Small | 0.50 | 529.0 | 1 | 486.0 | 4.00 | 228.5 |

table 2.

REVFEED

HICUT
$0.0-100.0 \mathrm{mS}$
$0.0-300.0 \mathrm{mS}^{2}$

500 Hz - flat

Sets the time before the reverberating part of the signal starts to build up, relative to the early reflections PREDLY.
High cut filter, shelving type. Provides an overall reverb high frequency rolloff ( 6 dB per octave) that is well suited to make a warmer sound. Sets the cut-off

[^7]|  |  | frequency of the overall High cut filter in $1 / 3$-octave steps. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ATT | -40-0.0 dB | The attenuation control sets the high frequency rolloff determined by HICUT. |
| LO-XOVR | 20 Hz - flat | Sets the crossover frequency for the $x$ LOW decay time multiplier in $1 / 3-$ octave steps. |
| HI-XOVR | 20 Hz - flat | Sets the crossover frequency for the $x$ HIGH decay time multiplier in $1 / 3-$ octave steps. |
| INITLEV | off - 0.0 dB . | Sets the level of the initial pattern. The purpose of this control is to balance the initial (early) reflection levels against the reverberating part of the reverb algorithm. |
| REVLEV | off - 0.0 dB . | Sets the level of the reflection envelope relative to the early reflections in 0.5 dB steps. If REVLEV is set to off you will hear only the initial reflections. |
| RWIDTH | 0-100\% | Sets the apparent stereo width of the reverberating part of the algorithm. At ' 0 ', the reverb tail will appear to be coming mainly from the center (mono compatible), whereas with RWIDTH set to ' 100 ' the $\mathrm{L} / \mathrm{R}$ reverberators are independent. |
| I-XFEED | on/off | With this parameter switched off, the cross feeds in the early reflections will be killed. The I-XFEED switched off, simultaneously with the parameter RWIDTH set to $100 \%$, will create a true stereo reverb. The effect from the left and the right channel will be generated totally independent. This is ideal for working with Dolby surround or for broadcasting in general where mono compatibility is important. The feature is also especially applicable for the film industry and post production suites. |

## REVERB-1

Here is a brief description of the parameters dedicated to the REVERB-1 algorithm. The diagram below is an addition to the signal flow diagram found in the "BASIC
ALGORITHMS" module, page 2.


## EDIT PARAMETERS:

MIX

$$
0-100 \%
$$

INLEV off - 0.0 dB .

Sets the mix between dry and wet signal. $100 \%=$ effect signal only. Mix can be set to $100 \%$ globally in the G-LEVELSmenu under UTILITY. Set MIXMODE $\mathbf{W E T}=\mathbf{M A X}$ and all dry signals are "killed" regardless of preset mix settings.
Sets the level of the input to the reverb in 0.5 dB steps. The function of the control is to maximize dynamic range. Please note that this control is positioned after the input PPM meter, and will not affect the input PPM reading, also if using an analog input, make the analog input adjustment in the G-LEVELS-menu under UTIL before setting this control. However, if the red overload LED flashes, turn down INLEV a couple of dBs. The control does not affect the bypassed signal level. Normally, you do
\(\left.$$
\begin{array}{ll}\text { OUTLEV } & \text { OFF }-0.0 \mathrm{~dB} . \\
\begin{array}{l}\text { Sets the output level of the reverb in } 0.5 \\
\text { dB steps. The function of this control is } \\
\text { to maximize dynamic range by allowing } \\
\text { the reverb algorithm to output maximum } \\
\text { signal to the DA converters. It affects the } \\
\text { output PPM reading. There is a separate } \\
\text { output level control for adjusting the } \\
\text { analog output level in UTIL. Set the } \\
\text { analog input (if you use analog input) } \\
\text { and the INLEV adjustments before } \\
\text { setting OUTLEV. The control does not } \\
\text { affect the bypassed signal level. } \\
\text { Normally, you do not have to change the }\end{array}
$$ <br>

factory default setting.\end{array}\right\}\)| Reverberation decay time. |
| :--- |
| DECAY |
| x LOW |
| x HIGH |
| frequencies. |

not have to change the factory default setting.

Sets the output level of the reverb in 0.5 dB steps. The function of this control is to maximize dynamic range by allowing the reverb algorithm to output maximum signal to the DA converters. It affects the output PPM reading. There is a separate output level control for adjusting the analog output level in UTIL. Set the analog input (if you use analog input) and the INLEV adjustments before setting OUTLEV. The control does not affect the bypassed signal level.
Normally, you do not have to change the factory default setting.

Reverberation decay time.
Relative decay time multiplier for low frequencies.

Multiplier for the high frequencies. If $x$ HIGH time is set to 0.5 , the HI decay time is half that of the nominal DECAY setting.

Simulation of reflections in the room "hitting" more or less uneven surfaces. The DIFFUSE parameter affects the density of the reverb tail. To set the DIFFUSE properly, turn off the INITLEV paramter and adjust while listening on percussive type of signals/instruments.

Room/Hall simulation/approximation. With this control the initial pattern of the reverb is chosen. In REVERB-1 4 distinctively different room shapes are available. The HALL reflection pattern is based on the acoustic properties of the Boston Symphony Hall, USA. The FAN pattern on a fan-shaped hall akin to the La Scala Concert Hall in Milan, acoustic designers 'golden ratio' shoe
box shaped Hall. Finally the Horseshoe shape pattern is based on the Musikvereinssaal, Austria. Table 1 shows the actual sizes for the rooms simulated.

| M5000 REVERB-1 \& 2 algorithms |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | For the HALL pattern: |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | suggested | suggested |
| SIZE |  | HALL | FAN | PRISM | H.SHOE | CLUB * | SMALL * | LENGTH | initial delay | revfeed |
| scale | factor | m3 | m3 | m3 | m3 | m3 | m3 | m | mS | mS |
| 4.000 | 64 | 1280000 | 640000 | 1024000 | 896000 | 320000 | 128000 | 153.8 | 223.60 | 74.53 |
| 3.160 | 32 | 640000 | 320000 | 512000 | 448000 | 160000 | 64000 | 122.1 | 177.48 | 59.16 |
| 2.500 | 16 | 320000 | 160000 | 256000 | 224000 | 80000 | 32000 | 96.9 | 140.86 | 46.95 |
| 2.000 | 8 | 160000 | 80000 | 128000 | 112000 | 40000 | 16000 | 76.9 | 111.80 | 37.27 |
| 1.600 | 4 | 80000 | 40000 | 64000 | 56000 | 20000 | 8000 | 61.1 | 88.74 | 29.58 |
| 1.250 | 2 | 40000 | 20000 | 32000 | 28000 | 10000 | 4000 | 48.5 | 70.43 | 23.48 |
| 1.000 | 1 | 20000 | 10000 | 16000 | 14000 | 5000 | 2000 | 38.5 | 55.90 | 18.63 |
| 0.800 | 0.5 | 10000 | 5000 | 8000 | 7000 | 2500 | 1000 | 30.5 | 44.37 | 14.79 |
| 0.630 | 0.25 | 5000 | 2500 | 4000 | 3500 | 1250 | 500 | 24.2 | 35.22 | 11.74 |
| 0.500 | 0.125 | 2500 | 1250 | 2000 | 1750 | 625 | 250 | 19.2 | 27.95 | 9.32 |
| 0.400 | 0.0625 | 1250 | 625 | 1000 | 875 | 313 | 125 | 15.3 | 22.18 | 7.39 |
| 0.316 | 0.03125 | 625 | 312 | 500 | 437 | 156 | 62 | 12.1 | 17.61 | 5.87 |
| 0.250 | 0.01563 | 313 | 156 | 250 | 219 | 78 | 31 | 9.6 | 13.98 | 4.66 |
| 0.200 | 0.00781 | 156 | 78 | 125 | 109 | 39 | 16 | 7.6 | 11.09 | 3.70 |
| 0.160 | 0.00391 | 78 | 39 | 62 | 55 | 20 | 8 | 6.1 | 8.80 | 2.93 |
| 0.125 | 0.00195 | 39 | 20 | 31 | 27 | 10 | 4 | 4.8 | 6.99 | 2.33 |
| 0.100 | 0.00098 | 20 | 10 | 16 | 14 | 5 | 2 | 3.8 | 5.55 | 1.85 |
| 0.080 | 0.00049 | 9.8 | 4.9 | 7.8 | 6.8 | 2 | 1 | 3.0 | 4.40 | 1.47 |
| 0.063 | 0.00024 | 4.9 | 2.4 | 3.9 | 3.4 | 1 | 0.5 | 2.4 | 3.49 | 1.16 |
| 0.050 | 0.00012 | 2.4 | 1.2 | 2.0 | 1.7 | 1 | 0.2 | 1.9 | 2.77 | 0.92 |
| 0.040 | 0.00006 | 1.2 | 0.6 | 1.0 | 0.9 | 0.3 | 0.1 | 1.5 | 2.20 | 0.73 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| *) only in Reverb-2 algoritm |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

table 1.
x SIZE

PREDLY
$0.0-200.0 \mathrm{mS}$ or $0.0-520.0 \mathrm{mS}^{3}$

Scales the dimensions of the simulated space depending on the SHAPE chosen. The specific room that is being simulated is scaled $1: 1$ at $\operatorname{SIZE}=1.00$. This can then be scaled up or down (see table 1). Provided that the predelay setting is relatively short, the corresponding volume of the simulated space is changed radically with this control. For example; with the HALL initial pattern, the approximate room volume goes from 1.2 cubic meters to $1,280,000$ cubic meters (table 1).

Sets the time that passes before the first reflection appear. Maximum predelay depends on SHAPE (see table 2).

[^8]Increasing the predelay will change the apparent position and, to some degree, the size of the room.

| Max predelay before loosing taps (std. memory) |  |  |  |  | Size | mS |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| @48KHz samplerate |  | mS |  |  |  |  |
|  | Size |  | Size | mS |  |  |
| Hall | 0.50 | 112.4 | 1 | 40.7 | 1.28 | 0.0 |
| Fan | 0.50 | 146.8 | 1 | 109.5 | 2.47 | 0.0 |
| Prism | 0.50 | 135.4 | 1 | 86.7 | 1.89 | 0.0 |
| H.Shoe | 0.50 | 116.2 | 1 | 48.3 | 1.36 | 0.0 |
| Club | 0.50 | 133.4 | 1 | 82.7 | 1.81 | 0.0 |
| Small | 0.50 | 141.2 | 1 | 98.2 | 2.14 | 0.0 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| @44.1KHz samplerate |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | Size | mS | Size | mS | Size | mS |
| Hall | 0.50 | 118.2 | 1 | 52.3 | 1.40 | 0.0 |
| Fan | 0.50 | 149.8 | 1 | 115.5 | 2.69 | 0.0 |
| Prism | 0.50 | 139.4 | 1 | 94.6 | 2.06 | 0.0 |
| H.Shoe | 0.50 | 121.7 | 1 | 59.3 | 1.48 | 0.0 |
| Club | 0.50 | 137.5 | 1 | 90.9 | 1.98 | 0.0 |
| Small | 0.50 | 144.7 | 1 | 105.2 | 2.33 | 0.0 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Max predelay before loosing taps (w.option 'himem' memory, order\# 5IRAM-1) |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| @48KHz samplerate |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | Size | mS | Size | mS | Size | mS |
| Hall | 0.50 | 459.5 | 1 | 393.6 | 4.00 | 0.0 |
| Fan | 0.50 | 491.2 | 1 | 456.9 | 4.00 | 251.2 |
| Prism | 0.50 | 480.7 | 1 | 436.0 | 4.00 | 167.6 |
| H.Shoe | 0.50 | 463.0 | 1 | 400.6 | 4.00 | 26.2 |
| Club | 0.50 | 478.8 | 1 | 432.2 | 4.00 | 152.7 |
| Small | 0.50 | 486.0 | 1 | 446.6 | 4.00 | 209.9 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| @44.1KHz samplerate |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | Size | mS | Size | mS | Size | mS |
| Hall | 0.50 | 500.2 | 1 | 428.5 | 4.00 | 0.0 |
| Fan | 0.50 | 534.6 | 1 | 497.3 | 4.00 | 273.4 |
| Prism | 0.50 | 523.2 | 1 | 474.5 | 4.00 | 182.4 |
| H.Shoe | 0.50 | 504.0 | 1 | 436.1 | 4.00 | 28.6 |
| Club | 0.50 | 521.2 | 1 | 470.5 | 4.00 | 166.2 |
| Small | 0.50 | 529.0 | 1 | 486.0 | 4.00 | 228.5 |

table 2.

REVFEED

HICUT
$0.0-100.0 \mathrm{mS}$
$0.0-300.0 \mathrm{mS}^{4}$

Sets the time before the reverberating part of the signal starts to build up, relative to the early reflections PREDLY.
High cut filter, shelving type. Provides an overall reverb high frequency rolloff ( 6 dB per octave) that is well suited to make a warmer sound. Sets the cut-off
${ }^{4}$ Only if idx RAM mounted is 64 K . Check your index ram in the CONFIG menu under UTILITY.

```
ALGORITHMS
M5ALGOIN
Rev 1.4 Page 10
```

|  |  | frequency of the overall High cut filter in $1 / 3$-octave steps. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ATT | -40-0.0 dB | The attenuation control sets the high frequency rolloff determined by HICUT. |
| LO-XOVR | 20 Hz - flat | Sets the crossover frequency for the x LOW decay time multiplier in 1/3octave steps. |
| HI-XOVR | 20 Hz - flat | Sets the crossover frequency for the $x$ HIGH decay time multiplier in $1 / 3-$ octave steps. |
| INITLEV | off - 0.0 dB . | Sets the level of the initial pattern. The purpose of this control is to balance the initial (early) reflection levels against the reverberating part of the reverb algorithm. |
| REVLEV | off - 0.0 dB . | Sets the level of the reflection envelope relative to the early reflections in 0.5 dB steps. If REVLEV is set to off you will hear only the initial reflections. |
| RWIDTH | 0-100\% | Sets the apparent stereo width of the reverberating part of the algorithm. At ' 0 ', the reverb tail will appear to be coming mainly from the center (mono compatible), whereas with RWIDTH set to ' 100 ' the $\mathrm{L} / \mathrm{R}$ reverberators are independent. |
| I-XFEED | on/off | With this parameter switched off, the cross feeds in the early reflections will be killed. The I-XFEED switched off, simultaneously with the parameter RWIDTH set to $100 \%$, will create a true stereo reverb. The effect from the left and the right channel will be generated totally independent. This is ideal for working with Dolby surround or for broadcasting in general where mono compatibility is important. The feature is also especially applicable for the film industry and post production suites. |

This is a description of the parameters specific to the REVERB-3 algorithm. The REVERB-3 algorithm is very different from the REVERB-1 and 2 algorithms. It is capable of making an exceptionally clear reverb sound using a very dense and natural sounding reverb tail. DECAY time can be controlled in four individually adjustable frequency bands. Using DIFFUSE and the DISTANS (distance) control, sounds can be made in which practically no initial reflections are heard. Add to this a slight modulation to minimize room interaction with your source material and you have - REVERB-3.

The diagram below is an addition to the signal flow diagram found in the "BASIC ALGORITHMS" module, page 2.


## EDIT PARAMETERS:

MIX

$$
0-100 \%
$$

INLEV off - 0.0 dB .

Sets the mix between dry and wet signal. $100 \%$ = effect signal only. Mix can be set to $100 \%$ globally in the G-LEVELSmenu under UTILITY. Set MIXMODE $\mathbf{W E T}=\mathbf{M A X}$ and all dry signals are "killed" regardless of preset mix settings.
Sets the level of the input to the reverb in 0.5 dB steps. The function of the control is to maximize dynamic range. Please note that this control is positioned after the input PPM meter, and will not affect the input PPM reading, also if using an

> OUTLEV

DECAY
x LOW
x LOMID
x HIGH
0.3-30.0 Sec.
0.01-2.5 times
0.01-2.5 times
0.01-2.0 times
analog input, make the analog input adjustment in the G-LEVELS-menu under UTIL before setting this control. However, if the red overload LED flashes, turn down INLEV a couple of dB's. The control does not affect the bypassed signal level. Normally, you do not have to change the factory default setting.
Sets the output level of the reverb in 0.5 dB steps. The function of this control is to maximize dynamic range by allowing the reverb algorithm to output maximum signal to the DA converters. It affects the output PPM reading. There is a separate output level control for adjusting the analog output level in UTIL. Set the analog input (if you use analog input) and the INLEV adjustments before setting this control. The control does not affect the bypassed signal level. Normally, you do not have to change the factory default setting.
Reverberation decay time (fig. below).
Relative decay time multiplier for low frequencies.

Relative decay time multiplier for the low-mid frequencies.

Relative decay time multiplier for the high frequencies.

FOUR BAND DECAY CONTROL

\(\left.\left.$$
\begin{array}{lll}\text { DIFFUSE } & \begin{array}{l}\text { The DIFFUSE parameter simulates that } \\
\text { the reflections in the room "hit" more or } \\
\text { less uneven surfaces. With smooth walls }\end{array} \\
\text { low diffusion takes place. Walls that are } \\
\text { uneven, with many angles, pockets or } \\
\text { with dedicated diffusers cause the } \\
\text { reflections to break into a high number } \\
\text { of less identifiable reflections producing } \\
\text { much higher diffusion. The DIFFUSE } \\
\text { parameter affects the quality of the } \\
\text { reverb tail as well as the spread of the } \\
\text { initial reflections. }\end{array}
$$\right\} \begin{array}{l}Sets the crossover frequency for the <br>
x LOW decay time multiplier in 1/3- <br>
octave steps. If LO-XOVR is set higher <br>
than LM-XOVR then the LM-XOVR <br>

frequency will change upwards.\end{array}\right\}\)| Sets the crossover frequency for the |
| :--- |
| x LOMID decay time multiplier in 1/3 |
| octave steps. If set lower than LO- |
| XOVR, then LO-XOVR will change |
| downwards. |

[^9]|  | interact with the direct signal creating <br> 'chorus-like' coloration's just as in real <br> rooms with strong low-order reflections. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| HICUT $500 \mathrm{~Hz}-$ flat | High cut filter, shelving type. Provides <br> an overall reverb high frequency rolloff <br> (6 dB per octave) that is well suited to |
| make the space sound warmer. |  |

This is a brief description of the NONLIN-1 parameters. With the NONLIN-1 algorithm a number of gated reverb type sounds and non-linear rooms can be created. By non-linear rooms we mean reverb sounds that cannot be made by any real room equivalent. A non-linear example typically has a fast build-up and sudden decay reverb, very useful for drum work. Another is that of a 'reverse room' by making a gradual build-up and sudden decay. The NONLIN-1 algorithm features 3 powerful controls for shaping the dynamics of the reverb pattern: ATTACK, HOLD and RELEASE as well as selection of the underlying reflection pattern; DIFTYPE, density control; DIFFUSE, plus stereo width and color controls. Please note that unlike a reverb plus a gate/expander device, this algorithm is completely level and time independent, i.e. each drumbeat gets identical and independent reverb 'tails' added, regardless of the level or how fast the beats are played in succession. The 'secret' behind this is the powerful M5000 initial pattern capabilities. The basic effect is produced by a very long, shapeable non-recirculating pattern of reflections. The diagram below is an addition to the signal flow diagram found in the "BASIC ALGORITHMS" module, page 2.


## EDIT PARAMETERS:

## PAGE 1:

MIX

$$
0-100 \%
$$

INLEV off - 0.0 dB

Sets the mix between dry and wet signal. $100 \%$ = effect signal only. Mix can be set to $100 \%$ globally in the G-LEVELSmenu under UTILITY. Set MIXMODE $\mathbf{W E T}=\mathbf{M A X}$ and all dry signals are "killed" regardless of preset mix settings.
Sets the level of the input to the program in 0.5 dB steps. The function of the control is to maximize dynamic range. Please note that this control is positioned after the input PPM meter, and will not affect the input PPM reading, also if using an analog input, make the analog

OUTLEV off -0.0 dB
input adjustment in the G-LEVELSmenu under UTIL before setting this control. If the red overload LED still flashes, turn down INLEV a couple of dBs. The control does not affect the bypassed signal level. Normally, you do not have to change the factory default setting.
Sets the output level of the program in 0.5 dB steps. The function of this control is to maximize dynamic range by allowing the chorus algorithm to output maximum signal to the DA converters. It affects the output PPM reading. There is a separate output level control for adjusting the analog output level in UTIL. Set the analog input (if you use analog input) and the INLEV adjustments before setting this control. The control does not affect the bypassed signal level. Normally, you do not have to change the factory default setting.

## PAGE 2:

| PREDLY | $0-490 \mathrm{mS}^{*}$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| ATTACK | $0-490 \mathrm{mS}^{*}$ | | Sets the time that passes before the first |
| :--- |
| reflection of the initial pattern appears. |

* As the total non-linear reflection pattern has a fixed length, the maximum time of the above parameters will depend on each others settings whose total cannot exceed 500 mS with standard memory.


## PAGE 3:

$$
\text { LOCUT } \quad 20-2.00 \mathrm{KHz}
$$

HICUT

Low cut filter, shelving type. Provides an overall low frequency rolloff ( 6 dB per octave). Sets the cutoff frequency of the overall low cut filter in $1 / 3$-octave steps.
High cut filter, shelving type. Provides an overall high frequency rolloff ( 6 dB
per octave) Sets the cutoff frequency of the overall high cut filter in $1 / 3$-octave steps.

## PAGE 4:

\(\left.\left.$$
\begin{array}{lll}\text { DIFFUSE } & 0-25 & \begin{array}{l}\text { Simulates the reflections in the room } \\
\text { "hit" a more or less uneven surface. The } \\
\text { DIFFUSE parameter affects the density } \\
\text { of the gated reverb. To set the DIFFUSE } \\
\text { properly, adjust while listening on } \\
\text { percussive type of signals or instruments. } \\
\text { High DIFFUSE settings might add some } \\
\text { release time. }\end{array} \\
\text { Adds extra diffusion to the non-linear } \\
\text { reverb. PREDIFF is a mix function } \\
\text { which adds prediffussion from the } \\
\text { selected DIFTYPE. }\end{array}
$$\right\} \begin{array}{l}The patterns used for prediffusion. The <br>
4 types have different 'color'- <br>
characteristics. The prediffusion is <br>

mixed into the reverb by PREDIFF.\end{array}\right\}\)| Sets the apparent stereo width of the |
| :--- |
| algorithm. At '0' the gated reverb will |
| appear to be coming mainly from the |
| center (mono compatible), whereas with |
| WIDTH |
| BRIGHT1, BRIGHT2, |
| WARM, MIDTONE |

## CHORUS-1

The following is a brief description of the CHORUS-1 algorithm. This algorithm produces normal chorus, flanging and to some extent, delay-effects, digitally. The algorithm is also capable of overdoing the effect in order to create some "wild" sounds. The diagram below is an addition to the signal flow diagram found in the "BASIC ALGORITHMS" module, page 2.


## EDIT PARAMETERS:

MIX

$$
0-100 \%
$$

INLEV off - 0.0 dB .

Sets the mix between dry and wet signal. $100 \%$ = effect signal only. Mix can be set to $100 \%$ globally in the G-LEVELSmenu under UTILITY. Set MIXMODE
$\mathbf{W E T}=\mathbf{M A X}$ and all dry signals are "killed" regardless of preset mix settings.

Sets the level of the input to the program in 0.5 dB steps. The function of the control is to maximize dynamic range. Please note that this control is positioned after the input PPM meter, and will not affect the input PPM reading, also if using an analog input, make the analog input adjustment in the G-LEVELS-

| OUTLEV | off - 0.0 dB . | Sets the output level of the program in 0.5 dB steps. The function of this control is to maximize dynamic range by allowing the chorus algorithm to output maximum signal to the $\mathrm{D} / \mathrm{A}$ converters. It affects the output PPM reading. There is a separate output level control for adjusting the analog output level in UTIL. Set the analog input (if you use analog input) and the INLEV adjustments before setting OUTLEV. This control does not affect the bypassed signal level. Normally, you do not have to change the factory default setting. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| PHASE | $0^{\circ}-90^{\circ}-180^{\circ}$ | Determines the sine wave modulation phase shift between left and right channels. At $0^{\circ}$ the left and right modulation will move in sync. At $180^{\circ}$ the modulation will move the channels against each other. |
| DELAY | $\begin{aligned} & 0-670 \mathrm{mS}(\mathrm{Idx}=32 \mathrm{~K}) \\ & 0-1.360 \mathrm{mS}(\mathrm{Idx}=64 \mathrm{~K}) \end{aligned}$ | Controls the length of delay time. Max delaytime. Depends on the index RAM in the machine (also called high memory). Check how much index RAM you have in the utility menu CONFIG. |
| FEEDBACK | 0-99\% | Controls the amount of effect signal routed back to the chorus input (Flanging). |
| SPEED | $0.1 \mathrm{~Hz}-10 \mathrm{~Hz}$ | Controls the rate of sweep in a range from 1 sweep every 10 seconds to 10 sweeps every second. |
| DEPTH | 0-100\% | Determines how wide a modulation (sweep) is produced. |


| FBLOCUT | off - 800 Hz | Feedback Low-Cut enables you to <br> remove low frequencies from the <br> feedback loop. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| FBHICUT | $1 \mathrm{KHz}-$ off | Feedback High-Cut enables you to <br> remove high frequencies from the <br> feedback loop. |
| HICUT | $500 \mathrm{~Hz}-$ flat | High-cut filter enables you to make the <br> chorus sound more "warm". This is a 6 <br> dB per octave filter. |
| ATT | $-40-0.0 \mathrm{~dB}$ | Gain for HICUT filter. Adjustable in 0.5 <br> dB steps. |

## REVPITCH

One of the common purposes for using a pitch shifter is to get the instrument or vocalist to sound "richer" as a plain effect. Yet, through time the pitch shifter has become more intelligent and the purposes more complicated. Today there are several different forms of pitch shifters which can be used in many different applications. An instrument or maybe more obvious - a vocalist who sings a bit out of tune can through the use of a pitch shifter appear to sing in key. Another use is to produce harmonies with a single source signal, creating your own choir in real time. In the basic software there are a few high quality pitch shifting algorithms that demonstrates the power of the M5000. Specific for the REVPITCH algorithm you are able to add some ambiance to the signal. The diagram below is an addition to the signal flow diagram found in the "BASIC ALGORITHMS" module, page 2.


A pitch shift effect is produced as the source signal is replayed either faster (pitch up) or slower (pitch down) The signals can then be mixed and the harmonies will be produced.

ALGORITHMS
M5ALGOIN
Rev 1.4 Page 22

## PITCH UP

In order to replay the signal faster, some chosen "parts" have to be repeated simultaneously with the original signal. This is called LOOP BACK. The selection of these parts are of vital importance for the quality of the pitch and are completely controlled by the software.

## PITCH DOWN

This is the opposite situation where chosen parts of the signal must be skipped. This is called LOOP FORWARD. Again, the selection of the parts are essential for the quality of the pitch. To avoid major disturbances caused by the repeating/skipping of parts in the signal, the distance of the inserted or removed parts must be as short as possible.

## EDIT PARAMETERS:

## PAGE 1:

MIX

$$
0-100 \%
$$

INLEV off -0.0 dB

OUTLEV
off - 0.0 dB

Sets the mix between dry and wet signal. $100 \%$ = effect signal only. Mix can be set to $100 \%$ globally in the G-LEVELSmenu under UTILITY. Set MIXMODE WET=MAX and all dry signals are "killed" regardless of preset mix settings.
Sets the level of the input to the program in 0.5 dB steps. The function of the control is to maximize dynamic range. Please note that this control is positioned after the input PPM meter, and will not affect the input PPM reading, also if using an analog input, make the analog input adjustment in the G-LEVELSmenu under However, if the red overload LED flashes, turn down INLEV a couple of dBs. The control does not affect the bypassed signal level.
Normally, you do not have to change the factory default setting.
Sets the output level of the program in 0.5 dB steps. The function of this control is to maximize dynamic range by allowing the program to output maximum signal to the DA converters. It affects the output PPM reading. Note that there is a separate output level control for adjusting the analog output
level. Set the analog input (if you use analog input) and the INLEV adjustments before setting this control. The control does not affect the bypassed signal level. Normally, you do not have to change the factory default setting.

## PAGE 2:

| PITCH 1 | $-12-12$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| FINE 1 | $-50-50$ |
| PITCH 2 | $-12-12$ |
|  | $-50-50$ |

FINE $2 \quad-50-50$

## PAGE 3:

LEVEL 1
off - 0.0 dB

PAN 1

LEVEL 2
off - 0.0 dB

PAN 2
50L - center - 50R

## PAGE 4:

HICUT 1
500 Hz - flat

ALGORITHMS M5ALGOIN
Rev 1.4 Page 24

Transposition for pitch shifter 1. One step corresponds to a semitone (one halfstep). 0 corresponds to no pitch shift and 12 or -12 is equal to one octave up or one octave down.

Fine adjustment of pitch shifter 1. When set to 0 there is no fine adjustment. -50 or 50 is equal to one semitone down or up.
Transposition for pitch shifter 2. One step corresponds to a semitone (one halfstep). 0 corresponds to no pitch shift and 12 or -12 is equal to one octave up or one octave down.

Fine adjustment of pitch shifter 2. When set to 0 there is no fine adjustment. -50 or 50 is equal to one semitone down or up.

In order to match the balance between the 2 pitches or/and the original (dry) signal LEVEL 1 sets the level on PITCH 1 only.

PAN separates the pitches between left and right. When PAN 1 is set to " $50 \mathrm{~L} "$ the PITCH 1 will appear in the left side.
Like LEVEL 1, LEVEL 2 sets the level on PITCH 2 instead.

When PAN 2 is set to " 50 R " the PITCH 2 will appear in the right side.

High cut filter, shelving type for PITCH 1. Provides an overall high frequency

| ATT 1 | $-40 \mathrm{~dB}-0.0 \mathrm{~dB}$ | The attenuation control sets the high frequency rolloff determined by HICUT 1 in 0.5 dB steps. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| HICUT 2 | 500 Hz - flat | High cut filter, shelving type for PITCH <br> 2. Provides an overall high frequency rolloff in 6 dB per octave. |
| ATT 2 | $-40 \mathrm{~dB}-0.0 \mathrm{~dB}$ | The attenuation control sets the high frequency roll off determined by HICUT 2 in 0.5 dB steps. |
| PAGE 5: |  |  |
| FB 1 | 0-100 | Feedback for PITCH 1. Returns the pitch output to its own input. This is for creating a more powerful and fat sounding effect. Set the FB $1>$ " 0 " to get pitch smears. The more FB the more powerful effect. |
| FB 2 | 0-100 | Same as FB 1. |
| XFB $1>2$ | 0-100 | Cross feedback. Returns the PITCH 1's output to PITCH 2's input. With this feature you are able to create some wild effects. If PITCH 1 is pitching down the effect can be pitched even lower by routing it to the PITCH 2's input which then must be set to pitch down. |
| XFB $2>1$ | 0-100 | Same as XFB $1>2$ only it works vice versa. |
| AMB-MIX | 0-100\% | Mix level of the amount of ambiance/reverb added to the pitch effect. |
| PREDLY | 0-150 mS | Sets the time that passes before the initial reflection pattern starts. |
| SHAPE | HALL, FAN, PRISM, H.SHOE, CLUB, SMALL. | Initial reflection pattern. The different room-shapes has different characteristics. Please refer to the REVERB-1 \& 2 algorithm text module |

## PAGE 7:

PITCdly
$10-40 \mathrm{mS}$

PITCcft
5-100
for further description of the different shapes.
This is only one reflection (tab). With this shape it will act as a normal digital delay.

Scales the dimensions of the simulated space depending on the SHAPE chosen. A detailed description can be found under the REVERB-1 algorithm text module.

Maximum pitch transition delay. The more delay the better quality of the pitch.

Per cent of the pitch delay used for crossfade. Must be tuned in order to minimize the tremolo effect. Best setting depends on the type of input signal.

## PITCH-1

The PITCH-1 algorithm is an ultra-fast and high resolution harmony effect with an intelligent working de-glitcher. The algorithm has two pitch shifters each of which can be panned in the stereo image. The pitch shifters have independent pitch, filter, feedback and delay settings. It is also possible to crossfeed from one pitcher to the other whereby existing pitch harmony build-ups can be made. The diagram below is an addition to the signal flow diagram found in the "BASIC ALGORITHMS" module, page 2.


## EDIT PARAMETERS:

## PAGE 1:

MIX

$$
0-100 \%
$$

INLEV off - 0.0 dB .

Sets the mix between dry and wet signal. $100 \%$ = effect signal only. Mix can be set to $100 \%$ globally in the G-LEVELSmenu under UTILITY. Set MIXMODE
WET=MAX and all dry signals are
"killed" regardless of preset mix settings.
Sets the level of the input to the program in 0.5 dB steps. The function of the

## OUTLEV <br> off -0.0 dB .

## PAGE 2:

PITCH-1
FINE-1
PITCH-2
FINE-2
$-12-+12$
$-1200-+1200$
$-12-+12$
$-1200-+1200$
PAGE 3:
LEVEL-1
PAN-1

LEVEL-2
PAN-2
off - 0.0 dB
50L - center - 50R
off - 0.0 dB
50L - center - 50R
control is to maximize dynamic range. Please note that this control is positioned after the input PPM meter, and will not affect the input PPM reading, also if using an analog input, make the analog input adjustment in the G-LEVELSmenu under UTIL before setting this control. If the red overload LED still flashes, turn down INLEV a couple of dBs. The control does not affect the bypassed signal level. Normally, you do not have to change the factory default setting.

Sets the output level of the program in 0.5 dB steps. The function of this control is to maximize dynamic range by allowing the pitch algorithm to output maximum signal to the DA converters. It affects the output PPM reading. There is a separate output level control for adjusting the analog output level in UTIL. Set the analog input (if you use analog input) and the INLEV adjustments before setting OUTLEV. This control does not affect the bypassed signal level. Normally, you do not have to change the factory default setting.

Pitch shift for channel 1 (in semitones).
Pitch shift for channel 1 (in cents).
Pitch shift for channel 2 (in semitones).
Pitch shift for channel 2 (in cents).

The output level of channel 1.
Controls the position of channel 1 in the stereo image.

The output level of channel 2 .
Controls the position of channel 2 in the stereo image.

## PAGE 4:

| HICUT-1 | 500 Hz - flat |
| :--- | :--- |
| ATT-1 | $-40-0.0 \mathrm{~dB}$ |
| HICUT-2 | $500 \mathrm{~Hz}-$ flat |
| ATT-2 | $-40-0.0 \mathrm{~dB}$ |

## PAGE 5:

FB-1

FB-2

XFB $1>2$

XFB $2>1$
0-100

## PAGE 6:

DELAY-1
DELAY-2
$0-310 \mathrm{mS}$

PAGE 7:
DGSPEED

POLYSPD
5-50

POLYDLY
5-18

High cut filter for channel 1. Enables you to make the pitch-transposer more "warm". This is a 6 dB per octave filter.
Gain for HICUT filter. Adjusts in 0.5 dB steps.

High cut filter for channel 2 Enables you to make the pitch-transposer more "warm". This is a 6 dB per octave filter.

Gain for HICUT filter. Adjusts in 0.5 dB steps.

The percentage of feedback for channel 1 (feedback path includes delay, pitch and hi-cut).

The percentage of feedback for channel 2 (feedback path includes delay, pitch and hi-cut).

The percentage of crossfeed from channel 1's output to ch. 2's input.
The percentage of crossfeed from channel 2's output to ch. 1's input.

The delay setting for channel 1 .
The delay setting for channel 2 .

The deglitch speed parameter should be set relatively low for slowly changing and monophonic source material. Higher settings are for fast changing and polyphonic material.
The polyphonic speed parameter should be set high for polyphonic and bass type sources.

The polyphonic delay parameter controls the response to polyphonic signals. When this parameter is turned up the response time will be slower, but the
ability to de-glitch polyphonic chords will be enhanced.

DGFILT $500 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{kHz}, 2 \mathrm{kHz}$, and 4 kHz .

## PAGE 5:

MIDIPtc

MIN $\quad-1200-1200$

This filter is used to determine the upper limit of frequencies of your input signal. The idea is to make the frequency range, within the pitch shifter, narrower. This will increase the speed of the pitch shifting, because the pitch detector doesn't have to search for so many frequencies in order to determine the pitch of the input signal. This conclusion is maybe more understandable if we use the following analogy: Let's say you have lost your car keys. It is quite likely that you would be able to locate them faster, if you knew they were somewhere in your garage, than if you knew they were somewhere in your house.

MIDI Pitch Bender control. If this is set to 'on' the PITCH-1 algorithm will react on Pitch Bender control from a MIDI keyboard.
This determines the minimum key range value for the Pitch Bender Wheel.

MAX -1200-1200 This determines the maximum key range value for the Pitch Bender Wheel.

## PITCH-2

The PITCH-2 algorithm is an ultra-fast and high resolution harmony effect with an intelligent working de-glitcher. The difference from the PITCH-1 algorithm is, that this is a stereo pitchtransposer where the left and the right channels are linked together to ensure a $100 \%$ phase linear output. The diagram below is an addition to the signal flow diagram found in the "BASIC ALGORITHMS" module, page 2.


## EDIT PARAMETERS:

## PAGE 1:



Sets the mix between dry and wet signal. $100 \%=$ effect signal only. Mix can be set to $100 \%$ globally in the G-LEVELSmenu under UTILITY. Set MIXMODE $\mathbf{W E T}=\mathbf{M A X}$ and all dry signals are "killed" regardless of preset mix settings.

INLEV off -0.0 dB .

OUTLEV off - 0.0 dB .

Sets the level of the input to the program in 0.5 dB steps. The function of the control is to maximize dynamic range. Please note that this control is positioned after the input PPM meter, and will not affect the input PPM reading, also if using an analog input, make the analog input adjustment in the G-LEVELSmenu under UTIL before setting this control. If the red overload LED still flashes, turn down INLEV a couple of dBs. The control does not affect the bypassed signal level. Normally, you do not have to change the factory default setting.
Sets the output level of the program in 0.5 dB steps. The function of this control is to maximize dynamic range by allowing the pitch algorithm to output maximum signal to the DA converters. It affects the output PPM reading. There is a separate output level control for adjusting the analog output level in UTIL. Set the analog input (if you use analog input) and the INLEV adjustments before setting OUTLEV. The control does not affect the bypassed signal level. Normally, you do not have to change the factory default setting.

## PAGE 2:

| PITCH | $-12-+12$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| FINE | $-1200-+1200$ |
| FB | $0-100 \%$ |
|  |  |
| DELAY | $0-310 \mathrm{mS}$ |

Pitch shifting in semitones.
Pitch shifting in cents.
The percentage of feedback. (Feedback path includes delay, pitch and hicut).

The delay setting. Sets the delay before the signal is pitched.

ALGORITHMS M5ALGOIN
Rev 1.4 Page 32

## PAGE 3:

HICUT

ATT
$-40-0.0 \mathrm{~dB}$

PAGE 4:
DGSPEED

POLYSPD 5-50

POLYDLY 5-18

DGFILT
$500 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1 \mathrm{KHz}, 2 \mathrm{KHz}$, and 4 KHz

PAGE 5:

| MIDIPtc | off, on |
| :--- | :--- |
| MIN | $-1200-1200$ |
| MAX | $-1200-1200$ |

High cut filter enables you to make the pitched signal more "warm". This is a 6 dB per octave filter.
Gain for HICUT filter. Adjusts in 0.5 dB steps.

The de-glitch speed parameter should be set relatively low for slowly changing and monophonic source material. Higher settings are for fast changing and polyphonic material.
The polyphonic speed parameter should be set high for polyphonic and bass type sources.

The polyphonic delay parameter control the response to polyphonic signals. When this parameter is turned up the response time will be slower, but the ability to deglitch polyphonic chords will be enhanced.

This filter is used to determine the upper limit of frequencies in your input signal. The idea is to make the frequency range, within the pitch shifter, narrower. This will increase the speed of the pitch shifting, because the pitch detector doesn't have to search for so many frequencies to determine the pitch of the input signal.

MIDI Pitch Bender control. If this is set to 'on' the PITCH-2 algorithm will react on Pitch Bender control from a MIDI keyboard.
This determines the minimum key range value for the Pitch Bender Wheel.

This determines the maximum key range value for the Pitch Bender Wheel.

The DELAY-1 algorithm is basically a simple and easy to handle true stereo digital delay line. The diagram below is an addition to the signal flow diagram found in the "BASIC ALGO-RITHMS"-module, page 2.


## EDIT PARAMETERS

## PAGE 1:

MIX

$$
0-100 \%
$$

INLEV off -0.0 dB .

Sets the mix between dry and wet signal. $100 \%$ = effect signal only. Mix can be set to $100 \%$ globally in the G-LEVELSmenu under UTILITY. Set MIXMODE $\mathbf{W E T}=\mathbf{M A X}$ and all dry signals are "killed" regardless of preset mix settings.
Sets the level of the input to the program in 0.5 dB steps. The function of the control is to maximize dynamic range. Please note that this control is positioned after the input PPM meter, and will not affect the input PPM reading, also if using an analog input, make the analog INLEV adjustment in the G-LEVELSmenu under UTIL before setting this control. If the red overload LED flashes, turn down INLEV a couple of dBs. The control does not affect the bypassed

OUTLEV off -0.0 dB .
signal level. Normally, you do not have to change the factory default setting.
Sets the output level of the program in 0.5 dB steps. The function of this control is to maximize dynamic range by allowing the delay algorithm to output maximum signal to the DA converters. It affects the output PPM reading. Note that there is a separate output level control for adjusting the analog output level. Set the analog OUTLEV adjustment in the G-LEVELS-menu before setting this control. This control does not affect the bypassed signal level. Normally, you do not have to change the factory default setting.

## PAGE 2:

L-DELAY
R-DELAY
FB
$1-670 \mathrm{mS}(1.36 \mathrm{Sec} .)^{6} \quad$ Sets the delay time for the left side.
$1-670 \mathrm{mS}(1.36 \mathrm{Sec} .)^{1} \quad$ Sets the delay time for the right side.
0-99 \%
Sets common feedback level for left and right delay output in percent. It feeds the delay output for left and right separately to its own input in order to make repeatable stereo echo effects. The control is common for left and right - but the signals are processed individually.

## PAGE 3:

$\begin{array}{lll}\text { FBLOCUT } & \text { off }-800 \mathrm{~Hz} & \begin{array}{l}\text { Common low cut filter control for left } \\ \text { and right feedback. }\end{array} \\ \text { FBHICUT } & 1 \mathrm{KHz}-\text { off } & \begin{array}{l}\text { Common high cut filter control for left }\end{array}\end{array}$ and right feedback.
High cut filter, shelving type. Provides an overall high frequency rolloff ( 6 dB per octave) that is well suited to make the delay effect sound warmer Sets the

[^10]cutoff frequency of the overall high cut filter in $1 / 3$-octave steps.
The attenuation control sets the high frequency roll determined by HICUT in 0.5 dB steps.

## DELAY-2

The DELAY-2 algorithm is an advanced but easy to handle true stereo digital delay line. With cross feedback section and modulation section, this delay algorithm is capable of doing anything from smooth spatial expanding to the wildest echo effects. The diagram below is an addition to the signal flow diagram found in the "BASIC ALGORITHMS"-module, page 2.

fig. 1

## EDIT PARAMETERS

## PAGE 1:

MIX

$$
0-100 \%
$$

INLEV

Sets the mix between dry and wet signal. $100 \%$ = effect signal only. Mix can be set to $100 \%$ globally in the G-LEVELSmenu under UTILITY. Set MIXMODE $\mathbf{W E T}=\mathbf{M A X}$ and all dry signals are "killed" regardless of preset mix settings.

Sets the level of the input to the program in 0.5 dB steps. The function of the control is to maximize dynamic range.
Please note that this control is positioned

## OUTLEV off - 0.0 dB .

## PAGE 2:

| DELAY-1 | $1-670 \mathrm{mS}(1.36 \mathrm{Sec} .)^{7}$ | Sets the delay time for the left side. <br> DELAY-2 <br> HICUT |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $1-670 \mathrm{mS}(1.36 \mathrm{Sec} .)^{1}$ | Sets the delay time for the right side. <br> High cut filter, shelving type. Provides an <br> overall high frequency rolloff $(6 \mathrm{~dB}$ per <br> octave $)$ that is well suited to make the <br> delay effect sound warmer. Sets the cutoff <br> frequency of the overall high cut filter in <br> $1 / 3$-octave steps. |  |
| ATT | $-40-0.0 \mathrm{~dB}$ | The attenuation control sets the amount of <br> high frequency rolloff determined by <br> HICUT in 0.5 dB steps. |

[^11]
## PAGE 3:

LEVEL-1
PAN-1

LEVEL-2
PAN-2

The output level of channel 1 .
Controls the position of channel 1 in the stereo image.
The output level of channel 2 .
Controls the position of channel 2 in the stereo image.

PAGE 4:

SPEED
$0.1 \mathrm{~Hz}-10 \mathrm{~Hz}$

0-100\%
$0^{\circ}-90^{\circ}-180^{\circ}$
on/off

INV PAN
DEPTH

PHASE

Controls the rate of modulation sweeps in a range from 1 sweep every 10 seconds to 10 sweeps per second.

Determines how wide a modulation sweep is produced. If you do not want to modulate the effect signal, set this parameter to $0 \%$.

Determines the sine wave modulation phase shift between left and right channel. At $0^{\circ}$ the left and right channel will move in sync. At $180^{\circ}$ the modulation will move against each other.
Inverts the phase of ch. 2 effect signal panned to ch. 1 output (see fig.1). With INV PAN "on" it is possible to make sum/difference type outputs that work well for spatial (TC 1210 alike) effects.

## PAGE 5:

The numeric sum value of the feedback- and crossfeed parameters may not exceed 200. Any value above 200 may cause oscillation.

FB-1 -100-100\%

FB-2 -100-100\%

XFB $1>2$

The percent of positive phase and negative phase feedback for channel 1 (feedback path includes low-cut and hicut filters on PAGE 6).

The percent of positive phase and negative phase feedback for channel 2 (feedback path includes low-cut and hicut filters on PAGE 6).
The percent of crossfeed from channel 1 output to ch. 2 input.

XFB $2>1 \quad-100-100 \%$

PAGE 6:

| LO-FB | $-40.0 \mathrm{~dB}-0.0 \mathrm{~dB}$ | Gain for LO-XOVR filter. <br> Adjust in 0.5 dB. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| HI-FB | $-40.0 \mathrm{~dB}-0.0 \mathrm{~dB}$ | Gain for HI-XOVR filter. <br> Adjusts in 0.5 dB. |
| LO-XOVR | $20 \mathrm{~Hz}-$ flat | Frequency for 6 dB pr. octave low-cut <br> filter. |
| HI-XOVR | $20 \mathrm{~Hz}-$ flat | Frequency for 6 dB pr. octave hi-cut <br> filter. |

The percent of crossfeed from channel 2 output to ch. 1 input. filter.

ALGORITHMS M5ALGOIN

Rev 1.4 Page 40

This algorithm is very similar to our popular sample option in the TC 2290. Some of the main differences are however, that this sampler features STEREO sampling, the sample can be played with MIDI velocity and the samples can be loaded and saved to disk. Several samples can be stacked in the internal memory and all samples can be replayed simultaneously from a MIDI keyboard/sequencer, e.g. a drum machine with sampled drum sounds. Another common use is "flying in" vocal samples. Let's say you need backing vocals on your song. For this purpose you hire one or more vocalists. Normally, they would have to sing the same chorus lines several times during the song and maybe it needs to be overdubbed with harmonies. All this takes time which in the end means money. With a sample flyer you have the backing singers sing several chorus versions on for example 10-15 different tracks. This might take only a few hours. Once the backing singers have left, the engineer/producer is able to easily arrange and mix a complete version of a chorus. When this is done the complete mix of a chorus is sampled into the M5000 in stereo. Now he can 'fly' the chorus into the song wherever it's needed. The chorus can of course be saved to disk for later remixing.

The diagram below is an addition to the signal flow diagram found in the "BASIC ALGORITHMS" module on page 2.


## STANDARD OR SIMM SAMPLER:

With software version 1.15 the SAMPLE-1 is implemented in a full featured version. All you have to do is to install some SIMM memory modules (CONFIGURATION Section, SIMM INSTALLATION module). When no SIMM memory is installed the so called STANDARD SAMPLER will be active and some parameters may be adjusted but has no effect. As soon SIMM is installed the SIMM SAMPLER will be active and all parameters will be fully available. The inactive parameters in the STANDARD SAMPLER will in the following be marked with (*).

## PROGRAM PARAMETERS*:

When storing a sample preset no sound is actually saved, only a number of setup parameters for use when recording and playing back samples. A SAMPLE-1 preset holds the following parameters:
MIX, INLEV, OUTLEV, RECMODE, FIL-RES, FADEIN, FADEOVR, TRIGGER, TRIGLEV, DEADBND and RETRIG.

Note that recalling another preset merely changes the current setting of these parameters.

## SAMPLE PARAMETERS:

The following parameters are attached to each sample and are also kept with the individual sample when saving to/loading from disk.

RECMODE, REVERSE, LEVEL, PAN, filter settings, MIDIkey, NOTEoff and VELsens.

## EDIT PARAMETERS:

MIX $0-100 \% \quad$ Sets the mix between direct and sampled signal. In order to monitor the input signal, press the bypass button. MIX can be set to $100 \%$ globally in the G-
LEVELS-menu under UTILITY. Set MIXMODE WET=MAX and all direct signals are "killed" regardless of preset mix settings.
INLEV off -0.0 dB .
Sets the level of the input to the sampler in 0.5 dB steps. The function of the control is to maximize dynamic range. Please note that this control is positioned after the input PPM meter, and will not affect the input PPM reading. Also when using an analog input, make the analog input adjustment in the G-LEVELSmenu under UTIL before setting this
\(\left.\begin{array}{ll}control. However, if the red overload <br>

LED flashes, turn down INLEV a couple\end{array}\right]\)| of dBs. This control does not affect the |
| :--- |
| bypassed signal level. Normally, you do |
| not have to change the factory default |
| setting. |

## PAGE 2:

SAMPLE* Sample selector

## ACTION

none
play

Shows current sample. When a sample has been made the text 'new..' is renamed to 'sampl(xx)'. If you load a sample from disk, the name of the sample is displayed here. Several samples can be stacked within the limit of available memory (see FREEMEM). You select a sample by turning softdial A.

This parameter lets you decide your actions with the sampler:

This is a "safe" mode. No action taken. This is for playback of selected sample. Play the sample by pressing the DObutton. You can manually re-trigger the sample by pressing the DO-button.

| play tr | Select this mode in order to enable audio triggering. Manual start of sample can still be done from the DO-button. When the FAST TRIG chip is installed on the AD/DA converter board, analog audio triggering can especially be used for fast drum triggering. Be aware that the FAST TRIG* is an 8 bit converter device, so do not set the MIX to anything other than $\mathbf{1 0 0 \%}$. You can hear the low quality (but fast) 8 bit trigger signal if you bypass when armed for audio triggering. |
| :---: | :---: |
| loop | After pressing the DO-button the selected sample will loop the sample in its full length from start point to end point. You can abandon the loop by pressing the UNDO-button. Everytime the DO-button is pressed the sample is started from the start point. |
| rec. | Start recording by pressing DO and stop recording by pressing UNDO. If UNDO is not pressed the recording will continue to the end of total sample time (FREE-MEM). You can then edit your sample as you wish. |
| rec. tr | This mode enables the possibility to start recording from the audio inputs. Manual start with DO-button is also possible. |
| delete* | This is for deleting one of the samples. Select the sample you want to delete and press DO and confirm the deletion. <br> CAUTION: When a sample is deleted you can not undo the event ! After deleting one of the samples, the rest automatically are packed in memory so maximum sampletime again is available. |
| pack* | When a sample has been truncated using the start and end point parameters (see page 3) the action can be made permanent and the available memory is "packed" in order to free deleted space for new samples. CAUTION: You can not undo a "pack" event, the sample is trimmed permanently ! |

load*

save*

Loads a sample from floppy disk. When a disk is inserted and DO is pressed the program dial scrolls through the samples on disk. Press DO to load the selected sample. While loading the sample, the sample rate, the FIL-RES used when saved, and whether it is mono or stereo, is shown in the display.
This mode stores the selected sample on floppy disk. When DO is pressed you can change the sample filename. Press DO again and the sample is stored on disk The filesize is depended on the word-width specified with FILE-RES.

The *.wav file is in a RIFF format, (As specified in Windows SDK multimedia file format) which means that it holds a little 'WAVE' header with information on data format (PCM), number of channels, (mono/stereo), sampling rate, bufferinfo, block align info, and a tc 'chunk' with information on: reverse, level, pan, filter settings, MIDI key note \& velocity sense flag.

| MAX. SAMPLE TIME PER FLOPPY DISK |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Samplerate | Wordsize bits | Disk size | 1.44M | Disk size | 720K |
|  |  | Stereo | Mono | Stereo | Mono |
| @ 48.0KHz | 24 | 5,0 Sec. | 10,0 Sec. | 2,5 Sec. | 5,0 Sec. |
|  | 18 | 5,0 Sec. | 10,0 Sec. | 2,5 Sec. | 5,0 Sec. |
|  | 16 | 7,5 Sec. | 15,0 Sec. | 3,8 Sec. | 7,5 Sec. |
|  | 8 | 15,0 Sec. | 30,0 Sec. | 7,5 Sec. | 15,0 Sec. |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| @ 44.1 KHz | 24 | 5,4 Sec. | 10,9 Sec. | 2,7 Sec. | 5,5 Sec. |
|  | 18 | 5,4 Sec. | 10,9 Sec. | 2,7 Sec. | 5,5 Sec. |
|  | 16 | 8,1 Sec. | 16,3 Sec. | 4,1 Sec. | 8,2 Sec. |
|  | 8 | 16,3 Sec. | 32,6 Sec. | 8,2 Sec. | 16,3 Sec. |

table 1.
name*

COUNTER
0.0s - (max. sampletime)

Press DO to name your sample. This helps you to get a good overview of the samples stacked in the memory. This feature is also available when you save a sample to disk.
Sample time counter. In playback mode it displays the length of the sample and in rec. mode it displays available sample-
time according to RECMODE and FREEMEM.

STATUS ready?, armed!, playing, record., looping

Read Only. Shows the current action of the sampler.

PAGE 3:

| START | $0.00 \mathrm{~s}-$ (end point) | Edit start point of current sample. When <br> the sample is edited, a small part of the <br> sample playbacks for cue listening. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| FINE | $0.00 \mathrm{~ms}-9.99 \mathrm{~ms}$ | Fine adjustment of start point with cue. |
| END | $0.00 \mathrm{~s}-($ max. sampletime $)$ | Edit end point of current sample. When <br> the sample is edited a small part of the <br> sample playbacks for cue listening. |
| FINE | $0.00 \mathrm{~ms}-9.99 \mathrm{~ms}$ | Fine adjustment of end point cue. |

## PAGE 4:

RECMODE mono, stereo

FIL-RES*

FREEMEM*

Switch between mono- or stereo sampling. Max. sampletime will be displayed in FREEMEM according to chosen mode .
For disk storage only. This is the wordwidth used when storing samples. The higher FILE resolution the higher disk storage capacity is required (See table 1).

Displays the total available sample time in seconds according to RECMODE and installed SIMM. After power up all memory installed is cleared and available for sampling.

| Max. sampletime | Mono | Stereo | Mono | Stereo |
| :--- | ---: | :---: | ---: | ---: |
| Samplerate | 44.1 KHz | 44.1 KHz | 48 KHz | 48 KHz |
| Standard | 1,5 | 0,8 | 1,4 | 0,7 |
| High Mem (5IRAM) installed | 3,0 | 1,5 | 2,8 | 1,4 |
| Dynamic RAM installed |  |  |  |  |
| 1 MByte | 23,8 | 11,9 | 21,8 | 10,9 |
| 4 MByte | 95,1 | 47,6 | 87,4 | 43,7 |
| 16 MByte | 380,4 | 190,2 | 349,5 | 174,8 |

Table 2.
REVERSE off - on
off - on

ALGORITHMS M5ALGOIN
Rev 1.4 Page 46

## PAGE 5:

| LEVEL | off -0.0 dB |
| :--- | :--- |
| PAN | $50 \mathrm{~L}-$ center -50 R |

FADEIN $0.00 \mathrm{~s}-1.00 \mathrm{~s}$

FADEOVR $\quad 0.00 \mathrm{~s}-1.00 \mathrm{~s}-$ to end

Sets the playback level of selected sample.

Pans the selected sample between left and right.

Sets the fade-in time for the selected sample. This parameter should normally be set to 0.00 s .

Sets the time that the running sample continues when a retrig occurs. To avoid a doubling effect on longer samples set this parameter to $\mathbf{0 . 0 0 s}$. To play the running sample through to the end, set FADEOVR to 'to end'. The fadeovr exists to avoid the annoying and unnatural sounding cut off caused by restarting a sample before it has finished playing. This feature is useful on certain drum and percussion sounds.

PAGE 6:
LOCUT*
$20 \mathrm{~Hz}-1.00 \mathrm{KHz}$

LO-ATT*
$0.0 \mathrm{~dB}--40.0 \mathrm{~dB}$

HICUT*
1.00 KHz - flat

HI-ATT* $\quad-40-0.0 \mathrm{~dB}$

Low cut filter, shelving type. Provides an overall low frequency rolloff ( 6 dB per octave). Sets the cutoff frequency of the overall low cut filter in $1 / 3$-octave steps. In 'loop' mode DO-button must be pressed again after editing the filters.
The attenuation control sets the low frequency rolloff determined by LOCUT in 0.5 dB steps.
High cut filter, shelving type. Provides an overall high frequency rolloff ( 6 dB per octave). Sets the cutoff frequency of the overall high cut filter in $1 / 3$-octave steps. In 'loop' mode DO-button must be pressed again after editing the filters.
The attenuation control sets the high frequency rolloff determined by HICUT in 0.5 dB steps.

## PAGE 7:

| TRIGGER manual, pedal, midi* | Enables different trigger modes <br> (playback of samples). When set to <br> 'manual', triggering of sample can be <br> done by pressing the DO-button. Choose <br> 'pedal' to trig sample also from the <br> pedal connector on the back panel of the <br> M5000 (normally open contact). You <br> can also trigger your samples from a <br> MIDI* keyboard (see next page). |
| :--- | :--- |
| TRIGLEV | off - 0.0dB |
| DEADBND | Sets the threshold level for the audio <br> triggering input. The fast trig will not <br> respond to input levels below -30dB. |
| RETRIG | Sets the level the audio level needed to <br> go below TRIGLEV before a new audio <br> trig is possible. Active only when audio <br> triggering. |
| A trigger mask that sets the time that <br> must pass before a new audio trig is |  |
| possible. With 'to end' selected audio |  |
| retrig is not possible before sample has |  |
| ended.. Active only when audio |  |
| triggering. |  |

## PAGE 8:

MIDIkey*
$0-\mathrm{c} 0-\mathrm{c} 7-127$

NOTEoff* off - on

When MIDI trigger is chosen (TRIGGER=midi) the samples can be triggered from a MIDI device, i.e. a MIDI keyboard. Select a keynote on which you want the sample to respond.
Note: ACTION (page 2) must be set to play!

Enables the M5000 to respond to 'note off' MIDI command. When NOTEoff is set to off the selected sample will playback its whole length regardless of the key is released. When NOTEoff is set to on the selected sample will stop playback when the keyboard key is released.

When set to 'on' the sample level will correspond to the value transmitted from the MIDI device.

MIDI CH ${ }^{*}$ omni - ch 1-ch 16 Sets the MIDI channel on which the samples receives the MIDI commands. It must match the transmitting MIDI device. In 'omni'-mode the samples will

[^12]This is a brief description of the parameters of the AMBIENCE algorithm. This algorithm is based on the well-known REVERB-1 and REVERB-2 early reflection patterns with some additional parameters. The high resolution of the implemented room shapes makes it possible for simulation of small ambient rooms only by the early reflections. An obvious application could be simulation of e.g. kitchens, dining rooms, living rooms with or without furniture. In other words, more or less specialized to film applications. However, the algorithm is also capable of adding new characteristics to a recording studios ambient recordings.
The diagram below is an addition to the signal flow diagram found in the "BASIC ALGORITHMS" module, page 2.


## EDIT PARAMETERS:

MIX

$$
0-100 \%
$$

INLEV off - 0.0 dB .

Sets the mix between dry and wet signal. $100 \%$ = effect signal only. Mix can be set to $100 \%$ globally in the G-LEVELSmenu under UTILITY. Set MIXMODE WET=MAX and all dry signals are "killed" regardless of preset mix settings.

Sets the level of the input to the algorithm in 0.5 dB steps. The function of the control is to maximize dynamic range. Please note that this control is positioned after the input PPM meter, and will not affect the input PPM reading, also if using an analog input, make the analog input adjustment in the G-LEVELS-menu under UTIL before setting this control. However, if the red overload LED flashes, turn down INLEV a couple of dBs. The control does not affect the bypassed signal level.

$$
\text { OUTLEV off }-0.0 \mathrm{~dB}
$$

HALL

FAN

PRISM
H.SHOE

CLUB

SMALL
x SIZE
0.040-4.000

Normally, you do not have to change the factory default setting.
Sets the output level of the algorithm in 0.5 dB steps. The function of this control is to maximize dynamic range by allowing the ambience algorithm to output maximum signal to the DA converters. It affects the output PPM reading. There is a separate output level control for adjusting the analog output level in UTIL. Set the analog input (if you use analog input) and the INLEV adjustments before setting this control. The control does not affect the bypassed signal level. Normally, you do not have to change the factory default setting.
Room/Hall simulation/equivalent. With this control the initial pattern is chosen. Six distinctively different room shapes are available:
The HALL reflection pattern is based on the acoustic properties of the Boston Symphony Hall, USA.
The FAN pattern is based on the La Scala Concert Hall in Milan, Italy. The PRISM pattern is from acoustic designers 'Golden Ratio' shoe box shaped Hall.
The Horseshoe shaped pattern is based on the Musikvereinssaal, Austria. The CLUB pattern is based on the typical dimensions of a club-sized location.
The SMALL pattern is an artificially made, relatively small room. The room has been reworked to minimize some of the unfortunate coloring artifacts that would otherwise have dominated a room of this size.

Scales the dimensions of the simulated space depending on the SHAPE chosen. The specific room that is being simulated is scaled $1: 1$ at $\operatorname{SIZE}=1.00$. This can then be scaled up or down (see table 1 in

| PREDLY | $0.0-100.0 \mathrm{mS}$ | Sets the time that passes before the first reflection appears. Maximum predelay depends on SHAPE (see table 2 in REVERB-1 algorithm text module). Increasing the predelay will change the apparent position and, to some degree, the size of the room. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| WIDTH | 0-100\% | Sets the apparent stereo width of the reflections. At ' 0 ', the reflections will appear to be coming mainly from the center (mono), whereas with WIDTH set to ' 100 ' the $\mathrm{L} / \mathrm{R}$ are independent (and mono compatible). |
| LOCUT | $20 \mathrm{~Hz}-1.00 \mathrm{KHz}$ | Low cut filter, shelving type. Provides an overall low frequency rolloff ( 6 dB per octave). Sets the cutoff frequency of the overall high cut filter in $1 / 3$-octave steps. |
| ATT | -40-0.0 dB | The attenuation control sets the low frequency roll determined by LOCUT. |
| HICUT | 1.00 KHz - flat | High cut filter, shelving type. Provides an overall high frequency rolloff ( 6 dB per octave). Sets the cutoff frequency of the overall high cut filter in $1 / 3$-octave steps. |
| ATT | -40-0.0 dB | The attenuation control sets the high frequency roll determined by HICUT. |
| SPEED | $0.100-10 \mathrm{~Hz}$ | Adding modulation to the ambience has the effect of smoothing out the frequency response, by effectively averaging out the room resonances. Note that adding even the least amount of modulation will cause the very high frequencies to diminish slightly and some detuning to occur. |

DEPTH
0-100 \%

PLDYMUL $\mathrm{x} 1, \mathrm{x}$ size

Determines how wide a modulation (sweep) is produced.
Pre-delay multiplier. When set to ' x 1 ' the pre-delay time will be set according to the value of the pre-delay parameter. When set to ' $x$ size' the pre-delay will be multiplied with the SIZE parameter. In this case a scaling of the room size will automatically adjust the pre-delay accordingly.

This is a brief description of the parameters in the TAPFAC algorithm, which is short for 'Tap Factory'. With this 'factory' you are able to control up to (the very first) 18 reflection taps enabling you to produce you own unique reflection pattern. Each tap can be individually adjusted with parameters like; delay, level and pan. With 18 taps, all with different settings, you can create the most complex room simulations such as stairways, chimneys, outdoor soundfields etc.

The diagram below is an addition to the signal flow diagram found in the "BASIC ALGORITHMS" module, page 2.


EDIT PARAMETERS:

MIX
0-100 \%

INLEV off - 0.0 dB .

Sets the mix between dry and wet signal. $100 \%$ = effect signal only. Mix can be set to $100 \%$ globally in the G-LEVELSmenu under UTILITY. Set MIXMODE $\mathbf{W E T}=\mathbf{M A X}$ and all dry signals are "killed" regardless of preset mix settings.
Sets the level of the input to the algorithm in 0.5 dB steps. The function of the control is to maximize dynamic range. Please note that this control is positioned after the input PPM meter, and will not affect the input PPM reading, also if using an analog input, make the analog input adjustment in the G-LEVELS-menu under UTIL before setting this control. However, if the red overload LED flashes, turn down INLEV a couple of dB's. The control does not affect the bypassed signal level.

$$
\text { OUTLEV off - } 0.0 \mathrm{~dB} \text {. }
$$

## PAGE 2:

SCALE

PREDLY
$0.0-100.0 \mathrm{mS}$

WIDTH

LASTTAP
1-18

Normally you do not have to change the factory default setting.
Sets the output level of the algorithm in 0.5 dB steps. The function of this control is to maximize dynamic range by allowing the TAPFAC algorithm to output maximum signal to the DA converters. It affects the output PPM reading. There is a separate output level control for adjusting the analog output level in UTIL. Set the analog input (if you use analog input) and the INLEV adjustments before setting this control. The control does not affect the bypassed signal level. Normally you do not have to change the factory default setting.

Sets the relative spacing of the taps to allow the scaling of 'x SIZE' of the space created. Example: With four taps set at $11,13,15$ and 17 ms and the SCALE set at $50 \%$ the actual tap lengths are $5.5,6.5$, 7.5 , and 8.5 ms . This parameter is extremely useful because it changes all 18 taps simultaneously without having to do individual tap adjustments.
Sets the time that passes before the first tap appears. Increasing the predelay will change the apparent position and, to some degree, the size of the room.
Sets the apparent stereo width of the taps. At '0' all taps will appear to be coming from the center (mono), whereas with WIDTH set to ' $100 \%$ ' the taps appear at the $\mathrm{L} / \mathrm{R}$ positions set by the PAN parameter.
Selects the amount of active taps starting from 1. When set to 18 all 18 taps are active.

PAGE 3:

| TAP | $1-18$ |
| :--- | :--- |
|  |  |
| DELAY | $0-624 \mathrm{~ms}$ |
| LEVEL | $0-100 \%$ |
| PAN | $----------------\quad$. |

## PAGE 4:

| LOCUT | $20 \mathrm{~Hz}-1.00 \mathrm{KHz}$ | Low cut filter, shelving type. Provides an <br> overall low frequency rolloff $(6 \mathrm{~dB}$ per <br> octave). Sets the cutoff frequency of the <br> overall high cut filter in $1 / 3$-octave steps. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| ATT | $-40-0.0 \mathrm{~dB}$ | The attenuation control sets the low <br> frequency roll determined by LOCUT. |
| HICUT | $1.00 \mathrm{KHz}-$ flat | High cut filter, shelving type. Provides <br> an overall high frequency rolloff $(6 \mathrm{~dB}$ <br> per octave). Sets the cutoff frequency of <br> the overall high cut filter in $1 / 3-$-octave <br> steps. |
| ATT | $-40-0.0 \mathrm{~dB}$ | The attenuation control sets the high <br> frequency roll determined by HICUT. |

## PAGE 5:

SPEED
$0.100-10 \mathrm{~Hz}$

DEPTH

Selects the tap to be adjusted. Select 1 to edit the first tap. Then turn dial "A" one click to the right to edit the no. 2 etc. All 18 taps can be edited according to LASTTAP.

Sets the delay time for the selected TAP.
Sets the level of the selected TAP.
Sets the panning of the selected TAP.

Low cut filter, shelving type. Provides an overall low frequency rolloff ( 6 dB per octave). Sets the cutoff frequency of the overall high cut filter in $1 / 3$-octave steps.

The attenuation control sets the low frequency roll determined by LOCUT.
High cut filter, shelving type. Provides an overall high frequency rolloff ( 6 dB per octave). Sets the cutoff frequency of the overall high cut filter in $1 / 3$-octave steps.

The attenuation control sets the high frequency roll determined by HICUT.

Adding modulation to the taps has the effect of smoothing out the frequency response, by effectively averaging out the resonances. Detuning of the created space will result from the use of this parameter so use judiciously.
Determines how wide a modulation (sweep) is produced.

This algorithm is the Digital Equalizer part of the MD2 extension TOOLBOX ${ }^{\text {TM }}$.
This digital EQ features a four-band parametric EQ with high- and low-pass filters switchable to notch, shelving and cut filters. The needle sharp notch filter has a range down to 0.02 octave, the shelving filters has a variable slope ranging from gentle $3 \mathrm{~dB} /$ oct over 6 and 9 to $12 \mathrm{~dB} /$ oct. Cut filters are switchable between $12 \mathrm{~dB} /$ oct maximum flat amplitude (Butterworth) or flat group delay (Bessel) types. The parametric equalizer features a natural and well defined bandwidth behavior at all gain and width settings:


Fig. 1 The bandwidth of the parametric $E Q$ is expressed in octaves and is defined at half the EQ gain


Fig. 2 The bandwidth of the notch filter is defined at its -3dB points.

The shelving and parametric filters have a $100 \%$ symmetrical boost/cut response, i.e. a positive setting in one band can be canceled exactly by another with the same negative gain setting (using the same frequency and bandwidth settings - like fig. 1) .
All equalizer settings can be changed 'on the fly' with no unnatural audible artifacts. A fast acting morphing technique naturally transforms any EQ setting into another (including EQ type and on/off selections). The morph time is fixed.
All filters are minimum phase types - i.e. there is a unique relationship between the amplitude and the phase response of the filters. The filters are done in extended resolution implementations with active noise shaping that forces errors at the 48th bit level further towards zero.

## EDIT PARAMETERS:

MIX
INLEV

OUTLEV

100 \%
off - 0.0 dB .
off - 0.0 dB .

Locked in $100 \%$ wet mode.
Sets the level of the input to the algorithm in 0.5 dB steps. The function of the control is to maximize dynamic range. Please note that this control is positioned after the input PPM meter, and will not affect the input PPM reading, also if using an analog input, make the analog input adjustment in the G-LEVELS-menu under UTILITY before setting this control. However, if the red overload LED flashes, turn down INLEV a couple of dBs. The control does not affect the bypassed signal level. Normally you do not have to change the factory default setting.
Sets the output level of the algorithm in 0.5 dB steps. The function of this control is to maximize dynamic range by allowing the algorithm to output maximum signal to the DA converters. It affects the output PPM reading. There is a separate output level control for adjusting the analog output level in UTILITY. Set the analog input (if you use analog input) and the INLEV adjustments before setting this control. The control does not affect the bypassed signal level.

## PAGE 2:

| LO-EQ | off, on |
| :--- | :--- |
| MID-EQ1 | off, on |
| MID-EQ2 | off, on |
| HI-EQ | off, on |

Switches the low-EQ filter off and on.
Switches the mid-EQ1 filter off and on.
Switches the mid-EQ2 filter off and on.
Switches the high-EQ filter off and on

## PAGE 3:

| DIAL A | DIAL B | DIAL C | DIAL D |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| LO-EQ | FREQ | WIDTH/SLOPE | LEVEL |
| par.eq | $19.95 \mathrm{~Hz}-5.01 \mathrm{KHz}$ | 0.1 oct -4.0 oct | $\pm 12 \mathrm{~dB}$ |
| notch | $19.95 \mathrm{~Hz}-5.01 \mathrm{KHz}$ | 0.02 oct -1.0 oct | $0.0 \mathrm{~dB}-$ off |
| shelve | $19.95 \mathrm{~Hz}-5.01 \mathrm{KHz}$ | $3 / 6 / 9 / 12 \mathrm{db} /$ oct | $\pm 12 \mathrm{~dB}$ |
| cut | $19.95 \mathrm{~Hz}-5.01 \mathrm{KHz}$ | Butterw/Bessel |  |

LO-EQ The low frequency filter of the 4-band equalizer. The use of this filter is determined by softdial A.

## PAGE 4:

| DIAL A | DIAL B | DIAL C | DIAL D |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| MID-EQ1 | FREQ | WIDTH/SLOPE | LEVEL |
| par.eq | $19.95 \mathrm{~Hz}-20.0 \mathrm{KHz}$ | 0.1 oct -4.0 oct | $\pm 12 \mathrm{~dB}$ |
| notch | $19.95 \mathrm{~Hz}-20.0 \mathrm{KHz}$ | 0.02 oct -1.0 oct | $0.0 \mathrm{~dB}-$ off |

MID-EQ1 The 1st midrange frequency filter of the 4-band equalizer. The use of this filter is determined by softdial A .

## PAGE 5:

| DIAL A | DIAL B | DIAL C | DIAL D |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| MID-EQ2 | FREQ | WIDTH/SLOPE | LEVEL |
| par.eq | $19.95 \mathrm{~Hz}-20.0 \mathrm{KHz}$ | 0.1 oct -4.0 oct | $\pm 12 \mathrm{~dB}$ |
| notch | $19.95 \mathrm{~Hz}-20.0 \mathrm{KHz}$ | 0.02 oct -1.0 oct | $0.0 \mathrm{~dB}-$ off |

MID-EQ2 The 2nd midrange frequency filter of the 4-band equalizer. The use of this filter is determined by softdial A.

## PAGE 6:

| DIAL A | DIAL B | DIAL C | DIAL D |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| HI-EQ | FREQ | WIDTH/SLOPE | LEVEL |
| par.eq | $501.2 \mathrm{~Hz}-20 \mathrm{KHz}$ | 0.1 oct -4.0 oct | $\pm 12 \mathrm{~dB}$ |
| notch | $501.2 \mathrm{~Hz}-20 \mathrm{KHz}$ | 0.02 oct -1.0 oct | $0.0 \mathrm{~dB}-$ off |
| shelve | $501.2 \mathrm{~Hz}-20 \mathrm{KHz}$ | $3 / 6 / 9 / 12 \mathrm{db} /$ oct | $\pm 12 \mathrm{~dB}$ |
| cut | $501.2 \mathrm{~Hz}-20 \mathrm{KHz}$ | Butterw/Bessel |  |

HI-EQ The high frequency filter of the 4-band equalizer. The use of this filter is determined by softdial A.

The REVCORE-1 is the first in a row of new TC Reverb algorithms based on the TC CORE ${ }^{1}$. This REVCORE-1 algo was developed specifically to perform small rooms. As a result of this, the Reverb buildup is fast, just like in smaller Rooms. Especially with percussive materials, this responsiveness is quite useful. Film and post production-work often requires use of smaller Rooms. Although the early reflection patterns bears names equivalent to the names used in Reverb 1\&2 algos, the patterns are modified for use with smaller spaces.

Here is a description of the parameters dedicated to the REVCORE-1 algorithm.


## EDIT PARAMETERS:

MIX

$$
0-100 \%
$$

INLEV off - 0.0 dB .

[^13]Sets the mix between dry and wet signal. $100 \%$ = effect signal only. Mix can be set to $100 \%$ globally in the G-LEVELSmenu under UTILITY. Set MIXMODE $\mathbf{W E T}=\mathbf{M A X}$ and all dry signals are "killed" regardless of preset mix settings.
Sets the level of the input to the reverb in 0.5 dB steps. The function of the control is to maximize dynamic range. Please note that this control is positioned after the input PPM meter, and will not affect the input PPM reading, also if using an analog input, make the analog input adjustment in the G-LEVELS-menu

| OUTLEV | OFF - 0.0 dB . | Sets the output level of the reverb in 0.5 dB steps. The function of this control is to maximize dynamic range by allowing the reverb algorithm to output maximum signal to the DA converters. It affects the output PPM reading. There is a separate output level control for adjusting the analog output level in UTIL. Set the analog input (if you use analog input) and the INLEV adjustments before setting OUTLEV. The control does not affect the bypassed signal level. Normally, you do not have to change the factory default setting. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| DECAY | 0.3-3.0 Sec. | Reverberation decay time. |
| x LOW | 0.01-2.5 times | Relative decay time multiplier for low frequencies. |
| x HIGH | 0.01-2.0 times | Multiplier for the high frequencies. If $x$ HIGH time is set to 0.5 , the HI decay time is half that of the nominal DECAY setting. |
| INITLEV | off - 0.0 dB . | Sets the level of the initial pattern. The purpose of this control is to balance the initial (early) reflection levels against the reverberating part of the reverb algorithm. |
| REVLEV | off - 0.0 dB . | Sets the level of the reflection envelope relative to the early reflections in 0.5 dB steps. If REVLEV is set to off you will hear only the initial reflections. |
| LM-XOVR | 20 Hz - flat | Sets the crossover frequency for the $x$ LOW decay time multiplier in $1 / 3$ octave steps. |
| RITHMS <br> N <br> .1 Page 12 |  |  |


| MH-XOVR | 20 Hz - flat | Sets the crossover frequency for the $x$ HIGH decay time multiplier in $1 / 3-$ octave steps. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| SHAPE | HALL, FAN, PRISM, H.SHOE CLUB, SMALL | Room/Hall simulation/approximation. With this control the initial pattern of the reverb is chosen. In REVCORE-1, 4 distinctively different room shapes are available (See REVERB $1 / 2$ for further information). |
| x SIZE | 0.040-4.000 | Scales the dimensions of the simulated space depending on the SHAPE chosen. The specific room that is being simulated is scaled $1: 1$ at SIZE $=1.00$. This can then be scaled up or down. Provided that the predelay setting is relatively short, the corresponding volume of the simulated space is changed radically with this control (See REVERB $1 / 2$ for further information). |
| PREDLY | $\begin{aligned} & 0.0-200.0 \mathrm{mS} \text { or } \\ & 0.0-520.0 \mathrm{mS}^{2} \end{aligned}$ | Sets the time that passes before the first reflection appear. Maximum predelay depends on SHAPE (see table 1). Increasing the predelay will change the apparent position and, to some degree, the size of the room. |

[^14]| Max predelay before loosing taps (std. memory) |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| @48KHz samplerate |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | Size | mS | Size | mS | Size | mS |
| Hall | 0.50 | 112.4 | 1 | 40.7 | 1.28 | 0.0 |
| Fan | 0.50 | 146.8 | 1 | 109.5 | 2.47 | 0.0 |
| Prism | 0.50 | 135.4 | 1 | 86.7 | 1.89 | 0.0 |
| H.Shoe | 0.50 | 116.2 | 1 | 48.3 | 1.36 | 0.0 |
| Club | 0.50 | 133.4 | 1 | 82.7 | 1.81 | 0.0 |
| Small | 0.50 | 141.2 | 1 | 98.2 | 2.14 | 0.0 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| @44.1KHz samplerate |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | Size | mS | Size | mS | Size | mS |
| Hall | 0.50 | 118.2 | 1 | 52.3 | 1.40 | 0.0 |
| Fan | 0.50 | 149.8 | 1 | 115.5 | 2.69 | 0.0 |
| Prism | 0.50 | 139.4 | 1 | 94.6 | 2.06 | 0.0 |
| H.Shoe | 0.50 | 121.7 | 1 | 59.3 | 1.48 | 0.0 |
| Club | 0.50 | 137.5 | 1 | 90.9 | 1.98 | 0.0 |
| Small | 0.50 | 144.7 | 1 | 105.2 | 2.33 | 0.0 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Max predelay before loosing taps (w.option 'himem' memory, order\# 5IRAM-1) |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| @48KHz samplerate |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | Size | mS | Size | mS | Size | mS |
| Hall | 0.50 | 459.5 | 1 | 393.6 | 4.00 | 0.0 |
| Fan | 0.50 | 491.2 | 1 | 456.9 | 4.00 | 251.2 |
| Prism | 0.50 | 480.7 | 1 | 436.0 | 4.00 | 167.6 |
| H.Shoe | 0.50 | 463.0 | 1 | 400.6 | 4.00 | 26.2 |
| Club | 0.50 | 478.8 | 1 | 432.2 | 4.00 | 152.7 |
| Small | 0.50 | 486.0 | 1 | 446.6 | 4.00 | 209.9 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| @44.1KHz samplerate |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | Size | mS | Size | mS | Size | mS |
| Hall | 0.50 | 500.2 | 1 | 428.5 | 4.00 | 0.0 |
| Fan | 0.50 | 534.6 | 1 | 497.3 | 4.00 | 273.4 |
| Prism | 0.50 | 523.2 | 1 | 474.5 | 4.00 | 182.4 |
| H.Shoe | 0.50 | 504.0 | 1 | 436.1 | 4.00 | 28.6 |
| Club | 0.50 | 521.2 | 1 | 470.5 | 4.00 | 166.2 |
| Small | 0.50 | 529.0 | 1 | 486.0 | 4.00 | 228.5 |

table 1.

## REVFEED

HICUT
$0.0-100.0 \mathrm{mS}$
$0.0-300.0 \mathrm{mS}^{3}$

500 Hz - flat

Sets the time before the reverberating part of the signal starts to build up, relative to the early reflections PREDLY.
High cut filter, shelving type. Provides an overall reverb high frequency rolloff ( 6 dB per octave) that is well suited to make a warmer sound. Sets the cut-off frequency of the overall High cut filter in $1 / 3$-octave steps.
${ }^{3}$ Only if idx RAM mounted is 64 K . Check your index ram in the CONFIG menu under UTILITY.

## ALGORITHMS

M5DYN
Rev 1.1 Page 14

| ATT | $-40-0.0 \mathrm{~dB}$ | The attenuation control sets the high <br> frequency rolloff determined by HICUT. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| SPREAD/DIFFTYPE $0-1$ | These two parameters work very close <br> together. Here is a brief description of <br> the two basic settings. When both <br> parameters are set to 1 , the REVCORE-1 <br> will be very fast in its build up, and <br> concentrated in the center. When set to 0 <br> the tail will be a little broader. When set <br> to either 0,1 or 1,0 the REVCORE-1 <br> will displace the center a little to one of <br> the sides. |  |
| RWIDTH | Sets the apparent stereo width of the <br> reverberating part of the algorithm. At <br> '0', the reverb tail will appear to be <br> coming mainly from the center, whereas <br> with RWIDTH set to '100' the L/R <br> reverberators are inde-pendent. |  |
|  | $0-100 \%$ |  |

The DYNAMIC1 algorithm is a high quality mastering Compressor/Limiter/Expander, which can be split in one, two or three stereo linked frequency bands using perfectly combining linear phase digital filters. Each band has numerous parameters for the precise tailoring of the dynamic properties of the audio signal in that particular frequency range.
SPECIAL NOTE: The flow chart shown below (fig. 1) comprises the entire Audio Signal Flow for the DYNAMIC1 algorithm from inputs to outputs. It is identical to the signal flow in all other algorithms except for the three utility parameters I/O: SOURCE, G-LEVELS: D-IN and G-LEVELS: MIXMODE have been fixed to respectively STEREO, 0.0 dB and WET=MAX. Furthermore, a delay on the bypassed signal, identical to the nominal signal delay of the working DYNAMIC1 algorithm is included, so that you can make A/B comparisons or 'on the fly' bypass the dynamics processing without introducing a shift in the signal delay.

fig. 1

ALGORITHMS
M5DYN
Rev 1.1 Page 16

fig. 2

## EDIT PARAMETERS:

As the DYNAMIC1's Compressor, Limiter and Expander can be split into 3 frequency bands it involves a lot of parameters. In order for you to have an easy user interface and quick overview of the individual gain reductions, the display will always show a gain reduction meter for each band and at the same time a selectable parameter, which can control the band individually, e.g.:

COMPRES L .M. $\qquad$ H. DYNAMICI
C-THRSH -10.0dB -12.0dB -15.0dB multibnd
Use the page buttons (11) to select either Compressor (page 4), Limiter (page 5) or Expander (page 6) and use the softdial A to select parameter.

MIX
INLEV

100 \%
off - 0.0 dB .

BALANCE $\quad 50 \mathrm{~L}$ - center -50 R

PAGE 2:
LOWCUT

LM-XOVR low off -16.00 KHz

Locked in $100 \%$ wet mode.
Sets the level of the input to the dynamic algorithm in 0.5 dB steps. The function of the control is to maximize dynamic range. Please note that this control is positioned after the input PPM meter, and will not affect the input PPM reading, also if using an analog input, make the analog input adjustment in the G-LEVELS-menu under UTIL before setting this control. However, if the red overload LED flashes, turn down INLEV a couple of dBs. The control does not affect the bypassed signal level.
Normally, you do not have to change the factory default setting.
Sets the output level of the algorithm in 0.5 dB steps. The function of this control is to maximize dynamic range by allowing the dynamic algorithm to output maximum signal to the DA converters. It affects the output PPM reading. There is a separate output level control for adjusting the analog output level in UTIL. Set the analog input (if you use analog input) and the INLEV adjustments before setting this control. The control does not affect the bypassed signal level.
Adjusts the balance between L and R signal.

Filters out sub-bass frequencies and any DC component found in the audio signal. WARNING: If this is set to off you must be very sure that no DC offset is present in the signal as this can interfere with the low level function of this algorithm.

The DYNAMIC1 algorithm is separated into 3 bands. LM-XOVR sets the crossover point between low- and
midband frequencies. When set to low off the algorithm is split in 2 bands.

MH-XOVR mid off -16.00 KHz

Sets the crossover point between midrange and high band frequencies. When set to mid off the algorithm is a fullband compressor/limiter and is controlled with softdial D. MH-XOVR can not overlap LM-XOVR.

## fig. 3

SOFTCLP


Soft clipping. Smoothly kills any overshoot that might occur after heavy compression or limiting. Please note that if you drive it too hard (with OUTLEV at 0 dB and too much plus gain in the BNDLVL controls, you might introduce noticeable distortion, on signals with a low harmonic content and/or on very pure signals). The distortion introduced is somewhat similar to the tape saturation kind of distortion that happens in an analog tape recorder.


## PAGE 3 - LEVELS:

| BND-LEV | off $-0.0 \mathrm{~dB}-12 \mathrm{~dB}$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| 0 dB ref | $-18 \mathrm{~dB}-0.0 \mathrm{~dB}$ |

Sets the level of the individual bands.
Sets the level at which there is unity gain (output=input). In a mastering situation this value would be set between -6 dB and -10 dB . For the EBU broadcast standard this would be set at -18 dB .

This single control is the one to use to bring a recording into the range where the compressor is behaving in a way you want - without excessive threshold tweaking.

Note: When coming into the M5000 at the Analog inputs always set the analog input gain to make the input PPM read just below 0 dB for optimum use of the $\mathrm{A} / \mathrm{D}$ converter dynamic range.

fig. 5

METERS
$5 \mathrm{~dB}-30 \mathrm{~dB}$

Adjusts the full scale of the gain reduction and expansion meters. The three band meters are locked to have the same scaling. The meters will display this full scale value in 10 steps of resolution, i.e. at a setting of 5 dB , each step is 0.5 dB .

## Meter example:

Each band meter is showing the gainreduction of the compressor to the right of the meter center-line and the gainreduction of the expander to the left of the centerline. Whenever the limiter of that particular band is in action a black square is shown at the end of the meter.

Illustrated above is thus an expander gainreduction of 2 dB in the low band, no action in the midrange and 2.5 dB compression in the high band as well as limiting taking place.

PAGE 4 - COMPRESSOR:
\(\left.$$
\begin{array}{lll}\text { C-THRSH } & -40 \mathrm{~dB}-12 \mathrm{~dB} & \begin{array}{l}\text { Compressor threshold with auto makeup } \\
\text { function. (Very useful if a there is low } \\
\text { level at the digital inputs. You may think } \\
\text { of this as a "drive" control for this } \\
\text { purpose). Thresholds are relative to the }\end{array}
$$ <br>

'0dB ref' as shown on figure 4.\end{array}\right\}\)| The ratio of the compressor can be |
| :--- |
| adjusted from off (1:1) to infinite gain |
| reduction. |


fig. 6

| C-ATTCK | $0.3 \mathrm{~ms}-100 \mathrm{~ms}$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| C-RLEAS | $20 \mathrm{~ms}-7.0 \mathrm{~s}$ |
| FEEDFWD | $0.0 \mathrm{~ms}-25 \mathrm{~ms}$ |

CREST

Compressor attack time.
Compressor release time.
Adjusts the Compressor sidechain feed forward delay time. By slightly delaying the audio signal, the compressor has ample time in which to create the necessary level correction. To take full advantage of the digital properties of DYNAMIC1 this value should be equal to or greater than the C-ATTCK value. If faster processing is a priority this value may be set to 0.0 ms and the compressor with behave as a standard analog compressor.

NOTE: The overall NOM-DLY parameter (page 7) must always be set equal to or greater than the FEEDFWD parameter found in the COMPRESSOR or LIMITER which ever is higher.
Adjusts the Crest Factor which determines whether the compressor shall react on peak-levels, RMS-levels or something in between, according to the adjusted C-THRSH, e.g. with a setting of 12 dB , the compressor will respond to the

RMS of the input plus peaks that are 12 dB higher than the current RMS value. The Root Mean Square has been found to correspond very well to our perception of level with total mixes and smoothly changing single sources. However, with more percussive types of materials you would go for a more peak oriented control of the compressor with a lower dB setting or PEAK only.

## PAGE 5-LIMITER:

L-THRSH
$-12 d B-0.0 d B$
Limiter threshold. The limiter is meant to be a brickwall type to prevent unintentional compressor overshoots from causing full-scale overloads. Its threshold is thus referring to digital fullscale as is the overall softclipper function.

The '0dB ref', the BND-LEV and the OUT-LEV parameters all affect 'how hard' you hit the limiter. A normal setting for CD master processing would be a few dBs down, whereas an EBU broadcaster would set L-THRESH as low as -12 dB (according to the R68 recommendations.)


## fig. 7

L-RATIO
L-ATTCK
L-RLEAS
FEEDFWD
off - infin:1
$30 \mu \mathrm{~s}-10 \mathrm{~ms}$
$20 \mathrm{~ms}-7.0 \mathrm{~s}$
$0.0 \mathrm{~ms}-25 \mathrm{~ms}$

Gain reduction ratio.
Limiter attack time.
Limiter release time.
Adjusts the Limiter sidechain delay time. By slightly delaying the audio signal, the limiter has ample time in which to create the necessary level correction. To take full advantage of the digital properties of DYNAMIC1 this value should be equal to or greater than the L-ATTCK value. If faster processing is a priority this value may be set to 0.0 ms and the limiter will behave as a standard analog limiter. In this case overshoot is not always suppressed
NOTE: The NOM-DLY parameter (page 7) must always be set equal to or greater than the FEEDFWD parameter found in the LIMITER or COMPRESSOR which ever is higher.

## PAGE 6 - EXPANDER:

E-THRSH
$-94 \mathrm{~dB}-1.5 \mathrm{~dB}$
E-RATIO
E-ATTCK
off - 1:infin
0.3-100 ms

E-RLEAS
$20 \mathrm{~ms}-7.0 \mathrm{~s}$
$-40.0 \mathrm{~dB}-0.0 \mathrm{~dB}$
PAGE 7:
PAR-LNK off - on

Expander threshold.
Expander ratio.
Expander attack time.
Expander release time.
Expander range.

Links the parameters found on any given PAGE (except ' 0 dB ref' and METER on page 3 , which always are linked) to each other in order to have common control of the bands. With LINK on any of the parameters can be adjusted and the two other bands will follow.

Adjusts the nominal delay common to all bands. This acts a a DDL for the full audio spectrum.
WARNING: The NOM-DLY should not be set lower than either of the FEEDFWD parameters found in the compressor or limiter pages as this parameter allows the FEEDFWD parameters to function as intended. To do so will disable the function of those parameters.

Working with the DYNAMIC1 algorithm has proven to be a very powerful tool when it comes to CD mastering and staying in the digital domain. Not only have the CD mastering plants had a very useful tool to their daily work, but also the recording studios have had great use of the DYNAMIC1 algorithm in order to deliver an even more optimized master to CD mastering plants - leaving their job a lot easier and quicker. However, with the use of the DYNAMIC1 algorithm some wishes for specific functions arose, such as equalization. Normally, one had to do this by connecting an external device - often having to convert back into the analog domain.

- Digital Equalizer with parametric, notch, soft shelving and cut EQ-types.
- Quantization and selectable Dithering types to $8,12,16,18,20,22$ and 24 bit levels.
- High resolution level and correlation meters.
- Stereo adjust facilities with variable mono, balance, channel \& phase swaps.
- Digital Fading with contoured frequency corrections at lower levels.

These functions and others are implemented in this TOOLBOX ${ }^{\mathrm{TM}}$ algorithm, which is a separate algorithm that will run standalone on a DSP engine or run concurrently with e.g. the DYNAMIC1 algorithm when two DSP engines are available.
One major difference from the other M5000 algorithms is that it provides an internal digital insert point to which any other DSP-module can be routed. This makes it possible to run e.g. the DYNAMIC1 algorithm in conjunction with the TOOLBOX ${ }^{\mathrm{TM}}$ in a complete dynamics mastering system.


## DIGITAL EQUALIZER:

The digital EQ features a four-band parametric EQ with high- and low-pass filters switchable to notch, shelving and cut filters. The needle sharp notch filter has a range down to 0.02 octave, the shelving filters has a variable slope ranging from gentle $3 \mathrm{~dB} /$ oct over 6 and 9 to
$12 \mathrm{~dB} /$ oct. Cut filters are switchable between $12 \mathrm{~dB} /$ oct maximally flat amplitude (Butterworth) or flat group delay (Bessel) types. The parametric equalizer features a natural and well defined bandwidth behavior at all gain and width settings.


Fig. 2 The bandwidth of the parametric EQ is expressed in octaves and is defined at half the eq gain


Fig. 3 The bandwidth of the notch filter is defined at its -3dB points.

Shelving and parametric filters are with a $100 \%$ symmetrical boost/cut response, i.e. a positive setting in one band can be canceled exactly by another with the same negative gain setting (using the same frequency and bandwidth settings).

All equalizer settings can be changed 'on the fly' with no unnatural audible artifacts. A fast acting morphing technique naturally transforms any eq setting into another (including EQ type and on/off selections). The morph time is fixed.

All filters are minimum phase types, i.e. there is a unique relationship between the amplitude and the phase response of the filters.

The filters are done in extended resolution implementations with active noise shaping that forces errors at the 48th bit level further towards zero.

## DITHERING:

As all processing inside the M5000 is done with a higher bit resolution than e.g. a CD or a DAT normally is capable of storing, when leaving the M5000, we are normally faced with the fact that we have too many bits. Just throwing away the bits e.g. below the 16th bit level, which will cause a graininess in the audio (and a quite objectionable distortion at low signal levels). If instead, a more intelligent form of 'throw away bits' processing is used, it is possible to eliminate these artifacts, and to some extend, it is even possible to obtain an audio resolution exceeding the 16 bits of the target storage medium.

The technique is simply to add a very slight amount of well controlled noise to the audio signal. This added noise will then cause the otherwise very signal dependent error signal (the thrown away bits) to loose all relations to the audio signal itself, i.e. the distortion is turned into signal independent noise. If we look at the resulting behavior of the least significant bits we may realize that they suddenly become very busy. In fact, on the average, they will tend to
represent the original 24 bit signal exactly. That is, suddenly, it is possible to pass signals below the 16 th. bit level. Or put popularly, we are trading a highly unmusical graininess and level distortion for a much less noticeable noise and get an improved reconstruction of the original signal. This process is popularly called dithering. Further, a shaping of the added noise is possible. The TOOLBOX ${ }^{\text {TM }}$ features 2 types of dithering: The TDF Triangular Probability Density Function, which is a flat power spectrum dithering type, and a High Frequency shaped TDF noise, that has a 5-6 dB less apparent added noise. Which one is the best depends on the program material, however in general, the HP-TDF is recommended.

## METERS:

As the meters on the M5000 front panel obviously are to rough for monitoring the signal levels, a special high resolution level meter has been implemented. The meter has several features such as switchable range and ticks ( dB marks) for easy monitoring of the critical levels. Maximum peak hold will display the highest peak that occurred or auto release will display the peak momentarily.

## STEREO ADJUST:

Different stereo adjust parameters enables you to fine adjust the balance between left and right. You can even swap left and right channel which can be a difficult operation in the digital domain. MS encoding/decoding and mono addition are other parameters that might be useful within the digital mastering domain. Phase problems can be fixed by the special phase control.

## FADING:

Digital fading is something you normally would do in your editing system, however for optimizing recordings between e.g. 2 DAT players fading possibilities are rarely available. With the TOOLBOX ${ }^{\mathrm{TM}}$ fading is this situation is readily possible.

There is even a unique fading feature - that is not readily available otherwise in a mastering plant - namely a selectable Fletcher-Munson corrected fade pattern - named FMC as parameter. As shown below on fig. 4, Fletcher and Munson, established a set of equal loudness contours for the human hearing, i.e. our normal experience of the loudness as a function of frequency at various levels. The term Phon is used to express our experience of loudness relative to 1 KHz .

The Fletcher-Munson Correction parameter adds a frequency contouring that is linked to the fade dB value. The correction chosen in the TOOLBOX ${ }^{\mathrm{TM}}$ comes in action at fader values below -20 dB only and makes the loss, as you fade out, of both low and high frequencies much less apparent. Maximum correction added happens at -60 dB and is close to +20 dB relative to 3 KHz . By fading with this pattern the program material seems to be more linear and pleasant to listen to during a fade out, instead of the usual 'thinning out' as you fade out.


Fig. 4 The Fletcher-Munson Equal Loudness Contour Curves

## EDIT PARAMETERS:

MIX
INLEV
100 \%
off - 0.0 dB .

OUTLEV
off - 0.0 dB .

Locked in $100 \%$ wet mode.
Sets the level of the input to the TOOLBOX ${ }^{\mathrm{TM}}$ algorithm in 0.5 dB steps. The function of the control is to maximize dynamic range. Please note that this control is positioned after the input PPM meter, and will not affect the input PPM reading, also if using an analog input, make the analog input adjustment in the G-LEVELS-menu under UTILITY before setting this control. However, if the red overload LED flashes, turn down INLEV a couple of dB's. The control does not affect the bypassed signal level. Normally you do not have to change the factory default setting.
Sets the output level of the algorithm in 0.5 dB steps. The function of this control is to maximize dynamic range by allowing the TOOLBOX ${ }^{\mathrm{TM}}$ algorithm to output maximum signal to the DA converters. It affects the output PPM

LOWCUT on/off
reading. There is a separate output level control for adjusting the analog output level in UTILITY. Set the analog input (if you use analog input) and the INLEV adjustments before setting this control. The control does not affect the bypassed signal level.

Filters out sub-bass frequencies and any DC component found in the audio signal. The filter crossover frequency $(-3 \mathrm{~dB})$ is fixed at 2.5 Hz and is using a nonobtrusive 6 dB /oct slope type filter. If needed, more steep LOWCUT functions can be found in the eq section.

PAGE 2:

METERS

RANGE $\quad 18 \mathrm{~dB}, 36 \mathrm{~dB}, 72 \mathrm{~dB}$

TICKS

HOLD
none, 6,9 or 12 dB
(display) input, output
none, max, auto

Selects whether the high resolution level meter is showing input- or output level.
Determines the resolution of the level meter. The full-scale range is selectable from 0 dB to either $-18,-36$ or -72 dB (see fig. 5-7).
A gradation to the level meter gives a quick overview of the level status.
Indicates Peak hold. If set to max or auto the peak hold either freeze the reached maximum level or if set to auto it will hold the peak momentarily.

## PAGE 3, LEVEL METER

| PPM |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| 72/6dB |  |


| PPM |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| 72/12dB |  |

Fig. 5 The Meter range at 72 dB with the different ticks.

| $\begin{aligned} & \text { PPM } \\ & 36 / 6 \mathrm{~dB} \end{aligned}$ |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| PPM |  |
| 36/12dB |  |

Fig. 6 The Meter range at 36 dB with the different ticks.

| PPM |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| 18/6dB |  |


| PPM |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| 18/12dB |  |

Fig. 7 The Meter range at 18 dB with the different ticks.

## PAGE 4, CORRELATION METER:



The correlation meter is displaying the phase coherence within the stereo signal. A true stereo signal (uncorrelated) should act around 0 moving towards +correlation. The more +correlation the more identical (mono) are the left and right channels.

## PAGE 5:

FADER $\quad-80 \mathrm{~dB}$ to 0 dB

The high resolution fader. Turn softdial A to manually fade in or out.

FMC off, on
Use the Fletcher-Munson corrected fade pattern by setting FMC to 'on'.

## PAGE 6:

| MS-INPUT | -180deg - off - 180deg | MS rotation of the input signal. Can be <br> used for L/R conversion of a MS coded <br> signal or for coding a L/R signal to M/S <br> signal, both when set at +45 . Adjusting <br> the angle from +45 downward toward <br> 'off' reduces the S-level, whereas <br> increasing the angle in the range +45 <br> toward +90 decreases the M-level. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| MS-OUTPUT | $-180 \mathrm{deg}-$ off -180deg | MS rotation of the output signal. (After <br> insert). Can be used for L/R conversion <br> of a MS coded signal or for coding a L/R <br> signal to M/S signal, both when set at <br> +45. |

## PAGE 7:

BALANCE

MONO
$0 \%-100 \%$
-3.0 dB to $+3.0 \mathrm{~dB} \quad \begin{aligned} & \text { Fine adjustment of the balance between } \\ & \text { left and right channel in } 0.1 \mathrm{~dB} \text { steps. }\end{aligned}$
-3.0 dB to $+3.0 \mathrm{~dB} \quad \begin{aligned} & \text { Fine adjustment of the balance between } \\ & \text { left and right channel in } 0.1 \mathrm{~dB} \text { steps. }\end{aligned}$

LR-SWAP
PHASE
off, on
L+R+, L-R+, L+R-, L-R-

Increases the center focusing of the signal by adding $L$ to $R, R$ to $L$ leakage.

Swaps the left and right channel.
Adjust the phase between left and right channel.


Fig. Signal flow of the input stereo adjustment parameters.

## PAGE 8:

L-DELAY
$0.0 \mathrm{~ms}-300.0 \mathrm{~ms}$
Individual delay for left channel. Can be adjusted in 0.1 ms steps.
\(\left.$$
\begin{array}{lll}\text { R-DELAY } & 0.0 \mathrm{~ms}-300.0 \mathrm{~ms} & \begin{array}{l}\text { Individual delay for right channel. Can } \\
\text { be adjusted in } 0.1 \mathrm{~ms} \mathrm{steps.}\end{array} \\
\text { INSERT }{ }^{4} & \text { off, on } & \begin{array}{l}\text { This enables you to internally insert a } \\
\text { 2nd DSP engine in the M5000 main- } \\
\text { frame i.e. running the DYNAMIC1 } \\
\text { algorithm. The insert point of the }\end{array}
$$ <br>
\& TOOLBOX will always send on the <br>
digital audio bus. The INSERT <br>
parameter determines whether the <br>

TOOLBOX algorithm shall the returned\end{array}\right\}\)| signal (on) of not (off). When set to 'on' |
| :--- |
| the inserted DSP's I/O configuration |
| must be set to INSERT in the UTILITY |
| menu. |

## PAGE 9:

| LO-EQ | off, on | Switches the low eq filter off and on. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| MID-EQ1 | off, on | Switches the mid-eq1 filter off and on. |
| MID-EQ2 | off, on | Switches the mid-eq2 filter off and on. |
| HI-EQ | off, on | Switches the high eq filter off and on |

## PAGE 10:

| DIAL A | DIAL B | DIAL C | DIAL D |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| LO-EQ | FREQ | WIDTH/SLOPE | LEVEL |
| par.eq | $19.95 \mathrm{~Hz}-5.01 \mathrm{KHz}$ | 0.1 oct -4.0 oct | $\pm 12 \mathrm{~dB}$ |
| notch | $19.95 \mathrm{~Hz}-5.01 \mathrm{KHz}$ | 0.02 oct 1.0 oct | $0.0 \mathrm{~dB}-$ off |
| shelve | $19.95 \mathrm{~Hz}-5.01 \mathrm{KHz}$ | $3 / 6 / 9 / 12 \mathrm{db} /$ oct | $\pm 12 \mathrm{~dB}$ |
| cut | $19.95 \mathrm{~Hz}-5.01 \mathrm{KHz}$ | Butterw/Bessel |  |

LO-EQ The low frequency filter of the 4-band equalizer. The filter type is determined by softdial A.

## PAGE 11:

[^15]ALGORITHMS
M5AMBIEN
Rev 1.2 Page 34

| DIAL A | DIAL B | DIAL C | DIAL D |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| MID-EQ1 | FREQ | WIDTH/SLOPE | LEVEL |
| par.eq | $19.95 \mathrm{~Hz}-20.0 \mathrm{KHz}$ | 0.1 oct -4.0 oct | $\pm 12 \mathrm{~dB}$ |
| notch | $19.95 \mathrm{~Hz}-20.0 \mathrm{KHz}$ | 0.02 oct -1.0 oct | $0.0 \mathrm{~dB}-$ off |

MID-EQ1 The 1st midrange frequency filter of the 4-band equalizer. The filter type is determined by softdial A.

## PAGE 12:

| DIAL A | DIAL B | DIAL C | DIAL D |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| MID-EQ2 | FREQ | WIDTH/SLOPE | LEVEL |
| par.eq | $19.95 \mathrm{~Hz}-20.0 \mathrm{KHz}$ | 0.1 oct -4.0 oct | $\pm 12 \mathrm{~dB}$ |
| notch | $19.95 \mathrm{~Hz}-20.0 \mathrm{KHz}$ | 0.02 oct -1.0 oct | $0.0 \mathrm{~dB}-$ off |

MID-EQ2 The 2nd midrange frequency filter of the 4-band equalizer. The filter type is determined by softdial A.

## PAGE 13:

| DIAL A | DIAL B | DIAL C | DIAL D |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| HI-EQ | FREQ | WIDTH/SLOPE | LEVEL |
| par.eq | $501.2 \mathrm{~Hz}-20 \mathrm{KHz}$ | 0.1 oct -4.0 oct | $\pm 12 \mathrm{~dB}$ |
| notch | $501.2 \mathrm{~Hz}-20 \mathrm{KHz}$ | 0.02 oct -1.0 oct | $0.0 \mathrm{~dB}-$ off |
| shelve | $501.2 \mathrm{~Hz}-20 \mathrm{KHz}$ | $3 / 6 / 9 / 12 \mathrm{db} /$ oct | $\pm 12 \mathrm{~dB}$ |
| cut | $501.2 \mathrm{~Hz}-20 \mathrm{KHz}$ | Butterw/Bessel |  |

HI-EQ The high frequency filter of the 4-band equalizer. The filter type is determined by softdial A.

## PAGE 14:

| QUANTIZ $8,12,16,18,20,22,24$ bit | Bit quantization of output. Select the <br> proper bit resolution that suits your <br> purpose. Dither level is automatically <br> adjusted to match the chosen output <br> resolution, but, to actually dither the <br> output, DITHER TYPE should be set <br> different from 'none'. Please note that <br> the dither and quantization levels affects <br> both the Analog and the Digital outputs. |
| :--- | :--- |
| DITHER TYPE $\quad$ none, TDF, HP-TDF | Dithering type selects between none <br> (pure truncation, w. no dither added) |
| TDF dither and high frequency <br> contoured HP-TDF dither. |  |

## CONFIGURATION

This section contains text modules concerning configuring either software or hardware applications. When software is released or a new module card is purchased, refer to this section in order to install it properly. The section contains the following text modules:

OPTION INSTALLATION

## MULTIPLE ATAC/M5000/M5000X SETUP

The ATAC-remote system is capable of controlling multiple M5000/X main frames. The link that enables the data communication is the TC DUAL RS485 INTERFACE for M5000/X, also referred to as the MULTAC, and the proprietary TC Network Protocol. The RS485 INTERFACE and a connection example is illustrated below:


With one RS485 INTERFACE (MULTAC) you are able to connect one or two M5000/X frames. The M5000/X's are to be connected to the M5000/X \#1 and \#2 plugs (Fig.1).

The RS485 plugs each connect to either one ATAC or is used to loop on to the next MULTAC box (Fig.2). Additionally, you are able to connect two ATACs using both RS485 sockets.

When connecting two ATACs, in a multiple M5000/X/ATAC setup, you gain the advantage that two users can communicate simultaneously. Please note that two users cannot access the same mainframe at once.

The MULTAC also has DC plug connections for the ATAC power supplies.

## Cables:

You may substitute the cable, connecting the ATAC to the MULTAC, with a "MIDI Plus" cables ( 5 pins with shield).
A 7 pin cable with shield must be used when connecting the M5000/X with the MULTAC.
Note: To ensure a safe data transferal, please follow the cable length requirements stated below:

1. When only ONE M5000X is connected use max. $10 \mathrm{~m} / 33 \mathrm{ft}$ of remote cable.
2. In a MULTIPLE M5000/X/ATAC setup, lengths of the cables connecting the ATAC to the MULTAC can be extended to $100 \mathrm{~m} / 328 \mathrm{ft}$. Maximum lenghts may not exceed 100 meters $/ 328 \mathrm{ft}$.

Here is the procedure for updating the application software in the M5000. You need to get to the special M5000 Setup Utility menu to accomplish this.

1. Turn the power off the M5000.
2. Press the BYPASS button (22) while switching power on again. Hold it for a few seconds. The M5000 Setup Utility Menu will appear.
3. With the PROGRAM DIAL (17) you choose the appropriate option:

LOAD DISK/CARD When DO is pressed the directory of the inserted floppy disk or memory card will appear. Scroll through the files with PROGRAM DIAL. Select the file by pressing DO and confirm the choice by pressing DO again. Software from floppy disk or memory card will be loaded. The UNDO button works as a cancel button and returns you to the Setup Menu.
SAVE DISK/CARD Saves the application software to a formatted floppy disk or memory card. By pressing DO you enter the name menu which enables you to give the application software a file name on the disk/card. On the top line a file name is displayed with a cursor under the first character - ready for editing.
SOFT DIAL A: CURSOR Moves the cursor forward or backwards through the name. The name can have a maximum of 8 characters.

SOFT DIAL B: LETTERS

SOFT DIAL C:
FIGURES
SYMBOLS
Selects a letter from A to z and inserts it in the name over the cursor.

SOFT DIAL D
As letters but numerical from 0 to 9 .
Inserts symbols instead of characters, e.g. blank or space is a symbol found here.
(Press DO to confirm file name.)

LOAD MIDI Enables you to receive software updates from another M5000 (See SAVE MIDI) or you can use TC's M5DUMP software package which enables you to dump software to the M5000 via an $\mathrm{IBM}^{\mathrm{mm}}$ compatible PC with a MIDI interface installed. This package is available from TC's bulletin board free of charge for M5000 USER CLUB members and instructions are implemented with the program.

SERIAL \#

FORMAT CARD

FORMAT DISK

Enables you to dump the software from one M5000 to another. Connect this (master) M5000's MIDI out to another (slave) M5000's MIDI in. Select 'SAVE MIDI' in order to transmit. The Slave M5000 must be set at 'LOAD MIDI'. Press DO at the master first and then press DO at the slave. An ERROR detector will inform you if any errors arises during MIDI dump. If any errors are detected it is recommended that you repeat the procedure. It is of course also possible to save the application software over MIDI to an $\mathrm{IBM}^{\mathrm{m}}$ compatible PC if you haven't a floppy disk instal-led.

Read Only parameter. Shows the topical serial number of the M5000 and the BIOS version no. If the FLASH EPROM is a 2 Megabit size it is also shown here. If not - it is a 1 Megabit.

Formats a never used memory card or erases the existing files. Insert the unformatted card or a card you want to erase that supports the JEIDA PCMCIA standard. A 64 Kb memory card will be able to hold over 2000 programs. Press DO and the display will tell you that all data will be erased on the card. Confirm by pressing DO or abort by pressing UNDO.

Formats a floppy disk with the $\mathrm{IBM}^{\mathrm{mm}}$ compatible format. After format there will be 1.44 MB available on disk. This means that if the application software is stored on disk there are room for over 50,000 programs. Press DO and the display will tell you that all data will be erased on the floppy disk. Confirm by pressing DO or abort by pressing UNDO.

## HARDWARE INSTALLATION

When the time comes when you want to upgrade your M5000 with additional modules in order to run more than one effect simultaneously, the procedure is as follows:

1. Switch the machine OFF and disconnect the main power cord.
2. Remove the DUM-1 option plate(s) or module by loosening the 2 screws.

As the M5000 modules are sensitive to static electricity, certain precautions must be taken to protect them from damage during storage and handling.

## STORAGE

Non-mounted modules should always be stored in anti-static shielding bags.

## GENERAL HANDLING

When inserting or removing any modules, avoid touching the circuit board by handling only the rear panel of the module. Modules should always be placed in either an M5000 or in a shielding bag. To minimize the static potentials that can cause damage to the electronic circuits, you should observe precautionary grounding techniques such as touching a grounded M5000 Audio Frame immediately before inserting modules.

## REMOVING MODULES

Before removing any module from your M5000, switch off the power and unplug the main power cable. Unplug all other connections from the module before unscrewing the two screws securing the module in the Mainframe. When removing a module from an M5000, the module should be mounted directly in another M5000 or placed in an anti-static shielding bag.

## MOUNTING MODULES

Before mounting modules in your M5000, switch off the power and unplug the main power cable. Remove the dummy-panel or original module from the slot where you want to install the module. The module should then be removed from the shielding bag and mounted directly in the M5000 Audio Mainframe by handling the rear panel of the module only. Avoid touching any components on the PCB-Board.
3. Set the DIP-switches on the module cards as shown below.

|  | Dip 1 | Dip 2 | Dip 3 | Dip 4 | Addr. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1. DSP | off | off | off | off | 0 |
| 2. DSP | off | on | off | off | 2 |
| 3. DSP | off | off | on | off | 4 |
| 4. DSP | off | on | on | off | 6 |


|  | Dip 1 | Dip 2 | Dip 3 | Dip 4 | Addr. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1. ADDA | on | off | off | off | 1 |
| 2. ADDA | on | on | off | off | 3 |

4. Insert the module as shown in figure 1 below.

fig. 1
AD/DA cards are always mounted as far away as possible from the power supply!
The module cards will fit in the module guides inside the M5000 frame. It is important that the modules are mounted correctly in these blue guides to ensure proper connection to the buss. It is recommended that you use a powerful light source in order to see properly inside the frame. Improper connection may cause serious damage to the modules.
5. Fasten the module with the two screws and connect the cables.
6. The module cards will be initialized during the next power up.
7. If there are problems e.g. the cards are not recognized by the M5000 frame, please check once again - especially the address settings.

In Appendix C you can find a self-test procedure to see if the M5000 has found the cards at the proper addresses and if the M5000 is working alright.

You have the facility to try the newest options within a certain time limit (normally 100 hours). First of all you need to install the new application software which is described in the 'SOFTWARE INSTALLATION' module in this section.

The option you want to install is in fact already in the M5000. However, a 20 character license code and an 8 character subcode are needed to access the option. This is done by writing a code in the M5000 generated only by TC Electronic. The code is based on a set of parameters you must know before you order the option:

- Serial number of the M5000 frame.
- A four character reference code (only for temporary option installation)

When you want to order an option, either temporary or permanent, you need to supply your dealer with these parameters. You will find them as follows:

## SERIAL NUMBER

1. Switch off the M5000.
2. Press the BYPASS-button (18) and switch the power on again while pressing the BYPASS-button. Hold it until the SETUP UTILITY-menu appears on the display.
3. Turn the PROGRAM-dial until you find the SERIAL \# and then press DO.

As you can see on this page, you will find not only the serial number but also the BIOS version and the size of the flash EPROM.

## REF. CODE

This reference code is also needed for generating the specific license code and subcode.
Follow the procedure below:
4. If you still are in the Setup Utility menu - switch the M5000 off and on again.
5. Press the UTILITY-button (17) and turn the PROGRAM-button to the CONFIG menu.
6. Use soft dial A to find the wanted option.
7. When you have found the wanted option press DO once.

| OPTION | TIME | LEVEL |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| (Option name) | -- | off |

This display shows the status of the selected option.
8. Press DO again;

LICENSE \# (XXXX) : 0000000000000000000
CURSOR CHAR NUM
9. The 4 character reference code for this option is found within the brackets, shown above as (XXXX). This code is only needed when ordering the temporary option with time limit.

Based on the parameters received from you by following the above procedure, a special license code and subcode, which are unique for your frame, are generated at TC Electronic headoffice in Denmark. This is the procedure regardless if you are ordering a temporary or permanent option.

## INSTALLING THE OPTION

10. When you have received the 20 character license code and the 8 character subcode, you can follow the steps 5 to 8 above, which should get you to the page where you can dial in the 20 character license code. It is of vital importance when selecting you select the option in step 7 that you select the same option as you got the 4 character reference code from!
11. Use softdial A, B and C as you dial the code.
12. When the license code is dialed please check once again that the characters are dialed correctly.
13. Press DO and dial the subcode. Again double check the dialed characters.
14. Press DO and switch the M5000 off and then on. If all codes were dialed correctly and the option selected is correct the option is now installed. If not:
```
The code is illegal
Press DO to continue
```

If this happens then start from step 10 again. Make sure that you select the right option according to the reference code you gave to your dealer.

## CHECK THE OPTION INSTALLED

You can check your installation by following procedure:
15. Press the UTILITY-button (17) and turn the PROGRAM-button to the CONFIG menu.
16. Scroll trough the options by turning soft dial A. If you want to check one of the options simply press DO. If LEVEL is 'off' the selected option is not installed. 'TIME' shows the time limit and counts down in hours and minutes unless it is a permanently installed option. The time limit will in that case be 'forever'. When the time is up you will get a warning and at the next power up the temporary option is gone. Press UNDO to go back to the CONFIGURATION MENU.

You have the facility to try the newest options within a certain time limit (normally 100 hours). First of all you need to install the new application software which is described in the 'SOFTWARE INSTALLATION' module in this section.

The option you want to install is in fact already in the M5000. However, a 20 character license code and an 8 character subcode are needed to access the option. This is done by writing a code in the M5000 generated only by TC Electronic. The code is based on a set of parameters you must know before you order the option:

- Serial number of the M5000 frame.
- A four character reference code (only for temporary option installation)

When you want to order an option, either temporary or permanent, you need to supply your dealer with these parameters. You will find them as follows:

## SERIAL NUMBER

1. Switch off the M5000.
2. Press the BYPASS-button (18) and switch the power on again while pressing the BYPASS-button. Hold it until the SETUP UTILITY-menu appears on the display.
3. Turn the PROGRAM-dial until you find the SERIAL \# and then press DO.

As you can see on this page, you will find not only the serial number but also the BIOS version and the size of the flash EPROM.

## REF. CODE

This reference code is also needed for generating the specific license code and subcode.
Follow the procedure below:
4. If you still are in the Setup Utility menu - switch the M5000 off and on again.
5. Press the UTILITY-button (17) and turn the PROGRAM-button to the CONFIG menu.
6. Use soft dial A to find the wanted option.
7. When you have found the wanted option press DO once.

| OPTION | TIME | LEVEL |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| (Option name) | -- | off |

This display shows the status of the selected option.
8. Press DO again;

LICENSE \# (XXXX) : 0000000000000000000
CURSOR CHAR NUM
9. The 4 character reference code for this option is found within the brackets, shown above as (XXXX). This code is only needed when ordering the temporary option with time limit.

Based on the parameters received from you by following the above procedure, a special license code and subcode, which are unique for your frame, are generated at TC Electronic headoffice in Denmark. This is the procedure regardless if you are ordering a temporary or permanent option.

## INSTALLING THE OPTION

10. When you have received the 20 character license code and the 8 character subcode, you can follow the steps 5 to 8 above, which should get you to the page where you can dial in the 20 character license code. It is of vital importance when selecting you select the option in step 7 that you select the same option as you got the 4 character reference code from!
11. Use softdial A, B and C as you dial the code.
12. When the license code is dialed please check once again that the characters are dialed correctly.
13. Press DO and dial the subcode. Again double check the dialed characters.
14. Press DO and switch the M5000 off and then on. If all codes were dialed correctly and the option selected is correct the option is now installed. If not:
```
The code is illegal
Press DO to continue
```

If this happens then start from step 10 again. Make sure that you select the right option according to the reference code you gave to your dealer.

## CHECK THE OPTION INSTALLED

You can check your installation by following procedure:
15. Press the UTILITY-button (17) and turn the PROGRAM-button to the CONFIG menu.
16. Scroll trough the options by turning soft dial A. If you want to check one of the options simply press DO. If LEVEL is 'off' the selected option is not installed. 'TIME' shows the time limit and counts down in hours and minutes unless it is a permanently installed option. The time limit will in that case be 'forever'. When the time is up you will get a warning and at the next power up the temporary option is gone. Press UNDO to go back to the CONFIGURATION MENU.

## SIMM PACK INSTALLATION

Before you can use your purchased option sampler, the SIMM-modules of dynamic ram must be mounted. You can buy SIMM-modules yourself in a normal computer store (see type listings below).

## START OF INSTALLATION:

1. Switch of the machine and remove the power cord.
2. Remove the DUM-1 option plate(s) or DSP-module by loosening the 2 screws.

As the M5000 modules are static sensitive devices, certain precautions should be taken to protect them from damage during storage and handling. Please refer also to CONFIGURATION section, HARDWARE INSTALLATION and MODULE HANDLING.

## GENERAL HANDLING

When inserting or removing any modules, avoid touching the circuit board by handling only the rear panel of the module. Modules should always be placed in either an M5000 or in an electrostatic shielding bag. To minimize the static potentials that can cause damage to the electronic circuits you should observe precautionary grounding techniques such as touching a grounded M5000 Audio Frame immediately before inserting modules.

## REMOVING THE MODULES

Before removing any module from your M5000, switch off the power and unplug the mains power cable. Unplug all other connections from the module before unscrewing the two screws securing the module in the Mainframe.

# SELECTION OF THE SIMM PACK MODULES 



| M5000 Display | Code option | seconds 44.1 (48) KHz | Resolution | No of SIMM's | Type of SIMM's |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| SAMPLER | 5SAMP-3 | 23.7 (21.8) | 16 bit | 2 | 1 MByte x 8 bit |
|  |  | 23.7 (21.8) | 18 bit | 2 | 1 MByte x 9 bit |
|  |  | 23.7 (21.8) | 24 bit | 3 | 1 MByte $\times 8$ bit |
|  |  | 23.7 (21.8) | 24 bit | 3 | 1 MByte $\times 9$ bit |
|  |  | 95.0 (87.3) | 16 bit | 2 | 4 MByte $\times 8$ bit |
|  |  | 95.0 (87.3) | 18 bit | 2 | 4 MByte x 9 bit |
|  |  | 95.0 (87.3) | 24 bit | 3 | 4 MByte x 8 bit |
|  |  | 95.0 (87.3) | 24 bit | 3 | 4 MByte x 9 bit |
|  |  | 380.4 (349.2) | 16 bit | 2 | 16 MByte x 8 bit |
|  |  | 380.4 (349.2) | 18 bit | 2 | 16 MByte x 9 bit |
|  |  | 380.4 (349.2) | 24 bit | 3 | 16 MByte x 8 bit |
|  |  | 380.4 (349.2) | 24 bit | 3 | 16 MByte x 9 bit |

(the sampling times mentioned are max. mono sampling times)

Suggestions to SIMM brands:
SAMSUNG
e.g. KMM594000B-7, 4M x 9 SIMM DRAM Memory Module

HITACHI
TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
TOSHIBA
Speed: fast page mode, 70 ns .

## INSTALLING SIMM PACK's ON THE DSP-MODULE

On the DSP-card between the back plate and the sub boards there are 3 sockets named : IC16, IC17 and IC18.

For installing 16/18 bit sampling, you have to place 2 modules in IC16 and IC18, the sockets nearest to the back plate.

For installing 24-bit sampling, you have to place 3 modules in all three socket positions.
The SIMM-modules can only be properly inserted one way, that is with the IC's on the SIMMmodules facing the back plate. There is an indentation (cut) on the SIMM-modules which must be placed correspondingly with the IC16-IC18-IC17 name reference markings on the board.


## MOUNTING MODULES

Before mounting the modules in your M5000, switch off the power and unplug the mains power cable. Remove the dummy-panel or original module from the slot where you want to install the module. The module should then be mounted directly in the M5000 Audio Mainframe by handling the rear panel of the module only. Avoid touching any components on the PCB-Board.
3. Insert the module after the diagram below (fig. 1).

fig. 1
AD/DA cards are always mounted as far as possible from the power supply !
The module cards will fit in the module guides inside the M5000 frame. It is important that the modules are mounted correctly in these blue guides to ensure proper connection to the buss. It is recommended that you use a powerful light source in order for you to see properly inside the frame. Improper connection may cause serious damage to the modules.
4. Fasten the module with the two screws and connect the cables.
5. The module cards will be initialized during the next power up.
6. If there are problems e.g., the cards are not recognized by the M5000 frame, please check the installation once again and the address settings (refer to HARDWARE INSTALLATION text module in this section).

In Appendix C you can find a self test procedure to see if the M5000 has found the cards at the proper addresses and if the M5000 is working alright.
7. Press the UTILITY button on the front panel and turn the PROGRAM dial to the CONFIG menu. The 'dram=xxxxxx' will tell you if the SIMM packs are installed properly. If 'dram=none' is shown then the M5000 hasn't found the SIMM packs.

## Release of 3.52 software for all M5000 owners

M5000 prior to serial number 283.294: AP1-V352.M5K
M5000X prior to serial number 290.238 2.0: AP1-V352.M5K
M5000 with serial numbers higher than 283.294: AP1-V352.M50
M5000X with serial numbers higher than 290.238 2.0: AP1-V352.M50

## Why two different M5000 softwares?

The host processor we were using in the M5000 was becoming unavailable. In order to maintain our service stock of these devices, we even had to stop selling M5000s in the end of 1997.
The new host requires a different but functionally identical software, hence two versions with the same number.
In order to prepare all machines for future developments, unfortunately this update has taken some time.

## Important information before you update

Please be sure to back-up your presets on a Floppy or to a sequencer before loading the new software.
To maintain preset compatibility between machines, a new preset structure is now implemented.
3.52 machines will read all presets from 1.15 upwards, but 3.52 presets are not readable on M5000s running software prior to 3.50 .
When you power on your M5000 after updating, all the internal presets will automatically be changed to 3.5 format, so you have to save the presets before updating to keep the old format also.

## New functions and bug fixes (Users updating from version 2.00)

## Multistage Phaser Algorithm

Deep phasing effects have once again become popular, and TC Electronics now respond to several requests of having a monster phaser available on the M5000.
The acclaimed TC XII phaser pedal has been digitized and made stereo, yet maintaining mono compatibility. The swept filter may emulate a structure from 4th to 12th order, and new modulation curves and principles have been added.

## Core 2 Reverb Algorithm

When it comes to reverb, it's an advantage to have many different variations available. Some M5 algorithms are focused on effect, others on the shape and characteristic reflections of a specific room.
The new Core 2 algorithm is mainly designed with natural rooms and a unidirectional source in mind. The response is dense and smooth without being chorused.

One of the important features about the M5000 reverbs are their true stereo structure. By using extra processing power, the left and right outputs are uncorrellated thereby ensuring mono compatablity. This crucial feature is of course not sacrificed on the new Core2.

Disk to Wizard: If you've also got other TC equipment like M2000, Finalizer, Finalizer Plus, DBMax, Fireworx or G-Force, software may now be transferred to a PCMCIA card from a Floppy disk via your M5000.
The function is found in the Utility menu under File.
Toolbox: The 0.1 dB level drop using Toolbox by-pass has been corrected. Please note, that the Toolbox Delay and Lowcut filter are active even when bypassed to avoid glitches. In the Toolbox, turning on and off the Eq bands now no longer produce clicks or pops.

## M5000 SOFTWARE 3.52

ULTIMATE SOUND MACHINES

## New functions and bug fixes (Users updating from version 3.5I)

Disk to Wizard: If you've also got other TC equipment like M2000, Finalizer, Finalizer Plus, DBMax, Fireworx or G-Force, software may now be transferred to a PCMCIA card from a Floppy disk via your M5000.
The function is found in the Utility menu under File.
Toolbox: The 0.1 dB level drop using Toolbox by-pass has been corrected. Please note, that the Toolbox Delay and Lowcut filter are active even when bypassed to avoid glitches.
In the Toolbox, turning on and off the Eq bands no longer produces clicks or pops.
When using Toolbox Eq or Parametric Eq, sometimes wrong values were showed on the display.
Core2 Reverb: Improved presets.
Phaser Algorithm: Improved stereo image.
User Interface: Accelerators on paramater dials have been improved.
MD2: A bug in the algorithm caused changes of settings when exiting certain pages.
MIDI: The MIDI map sometimes was not preserved during power down.

## Loading the software

1. Back-up old presets to a disk by pressing Program. Use the "RAM to File" and "File Save Disk" functions.
2. Hold the BYPASS button while you power on the M5000. This gives access to the Setup Utility Menu.
3. Insert the Floppy disk and press DO to load it.
4. Select the new file and press DO twice.
5. After a minute or so the display will read "Keep Previous Settings?"
6. Press UNDO and the new software is ready.

## Loading new software from the TC website: www.tcelectronic.com

The latest M5000 software is always available from our website. Mac-users, remember to use a PC formatted disk. When formatting a disk, the friendly Mac will let you choose which format to use.

1. Back-up old presets to a disk by pressing Program. Use the "RAM to File" and "File Save Disk" functions.
2. Check the serial number on your M5000. The serial number is placed on the back panel.
3. Select the correct file for your M5000 at the TC website by use of the tables with serial number areas.
4. Download the file. Don't rename it. The M5000 needs the .M5K or .M50 extension to recognize it.
5. If you have downloaded the zipped version, un-zip it now.
6. Copy the file to a PC formatted floppy disk and insert it in the M5000.
7. Hold the BYPASS button while you power on the M5000. This gives access to the Setup Utility Menu.
8. Insert the Floppy disk and press DO to load it.
9. Select the new file and press DO twice.
10. After a minute or so the display will read "Keep Previous Settings?"
11. Press UNDO and the new software is ready.

| 36 | Perc. 1 | Allround for kick, snare and toms | REVPITCH |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 37 | Crisp | Deep reverb for full drumkit | 70 | Wide | Stereo spread |
| 38 | TajMahal | Long rolling reverb | 71 | Wide+Amb | Like \#70 + ambience |
| 39 | Ambience | Natural club sized room acoustics | 72 | Funky | Funky guitar |
| REVERb-3 |  |  | PITCH-1 |  |  |
| 40 | GM-Hall | Warm reverb for various purposes; vocals | 73 | Slapitch | Slap Guitar |
| 41 | Ovrmuch2 | Effect, replaces old REVERB-1 preset | 74 | PowerOct | Octave below |
| 42 | WoodHall | Warm reverb for harpe and guitar | 75 | Valley | Detuned room |
| 43 | RichVerb | Short and bright. Good for almost anything | 76 | Climb | Pitch climbing up |
| 44 | BigBlue2 | Warm reverb, replaces old REVERB-1 preset | 77 | Barbshop | Minor 3rd blw, 5th abv. |
| 45 | Locker2 | Short reverb with early reflections; vocal, guitar | 78 | Fifths | 5th above and below |
| 46 | 5000 Hall | Bright reverb for general puposes; vocal, drums | 79 | Octave+ | Octave above |
| 47 | SteelPIt | Emul. of EMT1 40 (tube) steelplate. Try also w. pre-delay | 80 | Chord | Major triad chord |
| 48 | GoldPlt | Emul. of EMT240 goldplate. Try also with pre-delay | 81 | Horror | Spacey pitch |
| 49 | PercVerb | Short, general purpose reverb. Percussion and drums | 82 | Steel | Metallic pitch |
| 50 | KickVerb | Very short deep reverb. Kickdrums and Toms. | 83 | WideBass | Chorus for bass |
| 51 | Dense-1 | Bright hall without modulation | 84 | Vocalfml | Pitch for female vocal |
| NONLIN-1 |  |  | 85 | Vocals | General vocal pitch |
| 52 | KitPig 1 |  | PITCH-2 |  |  |
| 53 | KitPig2 |  | 86 | Stereo |  |
| 54 | SoBad |  | DELAY-1 |  |  |
| 55 | Shapelt |  | 87 | Straight |  |
| 56 | Closet |  | DELAY-2 |  |  |
| 57 | Rumble |  | 88 | Mod-Echo |  |
| 58 | Reverse |  | 89 | Apollo | Soundscape |
| CH | US-1 |  | 90 | Shuffle | Rhythm delay |
| 59 | The King | Delay + stereo spread for vocal / guitar | 91 | Country | For slide/steelguitar |
| 60 | VocDelay | Delay + stereo spread for vocal / guitar | 92 | Dlysite | Guit. chords and tones |
| 61 | Echoplex | Old tape echo with wow and flutter | 93 | Expand | Exp. Stereo image |
| 62 | 2 Track | Double track with stereo spread | 94 | Softend | Mellow guitar delay |
| 63 | SlowMo | Slow Chorus | 95 | ExpDelay | Wide chorus delay |
| 64 | Flanger | Normal Flanger | 96 | ChorEcho | Chorus on echotail |
| 65 | Hi-Trash | Flanger with high pitch feedback | 97 | Spatial | TC 1210 effect |
| 66 | Lo-Trash | Flanger with low pitch feedback | 98 | DelayPan | TC 1210 effect |
| 67 | Plain | Normal Chorus | SAMPLE-1 |  |  |
| 68 | Seashore | Just a feeling | 99 | Sample | Standard sampler |
| 69 | Flow | Chorus with delay for a slow guitar |  |  |  |

1 Church 1 Very bright long reverb for everything 2 Church 2 Warm reverb for everything
4 VocalDry Plate for vocal
5 VocalWet Plate for vocal / everything

Slapback type rev. for vocal / inst. Short mellow room for ie. BD For short percussive sound
Good for blending guitars into mix Discreet hall, without loosing def.



| REVCORE2 |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| 132 | InstRoom |
| 133 | DarkRoom |
| 134 | DarkHall |
| 135 | PercRoom |
| 136 | LiveRoom |
| 137 | Chuch 3 |
| 138 | WoodRoom |
| PHASER-1 |  |
| 139 | Phase 1 |
| 140 | Trash |
| 141 | Sgt.\#1 |
| 142 | Sgt.\#2 |
| 143 | Deep \#1 |
| 144 | Deep \#2 |
| 145 | Deep \#3 |
| DYNAMIC1 |  |
| 200 | IBandCom |
| 201 | 2 2BandCom |
| 202 | 3 BandCom |
| 203 | TapeSim1 |
| 204 | TapeSim2 |
| 205 | Loudness |
| 206 | RockLim1 |
| 207 | Hi-Fi |
| 208 | Gain |
| 209 | ComPand |
| 210 | EasyExp1 |
| 211 | Softlim |
| 212 | RecComp |
| 213 | CDMaster |
| TOOLBOX |  |
| 20 |  |



| $\leftharpoondown$ | $\checkmark$ | $\leftharpoondown$ | $\leftharpoondown$ | $\leftharpoondown$ | $\leftharpoondown$ | $\leftharpoondown$ | $\leftharpoondown$ | $\leftharpoondown$ | $\checkmark$ | $\leftharpoondown$ | $\leftharpoondown$ | － |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\stackrel{\sim}{\square}$ | $\frac{\sim}{\square}$ | $\stackrel{N}{N}$ | $\stackrel{\sim}{\mathrm{N}}$ | $\stackrel{10}{0}$ | $\frac{1}{\square}$ | $\stackrel{\sim}{1}$ | $\stackrel{\downarrow}{\top}$ | $\stackrel{1}{\sim}$ | $\stackrel{\sim}{\square}$ | ¢ | ¢ | $\stackrel{\sim}{1}$ |
| $\stackrel{\sim}{\sim}$ | ナ | $\begin{aligned} & n \\ & \mathrm{~N} \end{aligned}$ | $\infty$ | － | ナ | $\stackrel{\odot}{\leftarrow}$ | ＊ | $\frac{\pi}{\square}$ | $\nabla$ | 10 | $\stackrel{10}{\sim}$ | $\stackrel{10}{\sim}$ |


|  |
| :---: |

$$
\begin{array}{|l|l|l|l|}
\hline 0 & 0 & \underset{N}{N} & \underset{N}{n} \\
\hline
\end{array}
$$

$$
\left|\begin{array}{c}
\sim \\
\underset{\sim}{\tau}
\end{array}\right|
$$

$$
\circ
$$

$$
\circ
$$

$$
\circ
$$

$$
F
$$

$$
\underset{\sim}{9}=
$$

$$
=
$$

| ¢ | $\stackrel{\square}{\circ}$ |  |  | A | f | $\stackrel{\square}{8}$ | of | -告\| | $\begin{aligned} & \circ \\ & \hline 0.0 \end{aligned}$ | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{\circ}$ | \％ | $\stackrel{0}{0}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 枣 | 䂴 |  |  | － | $\frac{0}{2}$ |  |  | I | $\overline{\mid \overline{\overline{\hat{b}}}} \mid$ | 部\| | $\stackrel{\circ}{\text { i }}$ | 悩 |
|  | $\stackrel{\varphi}{e}$ | $\stackrel{\square}{\circ}$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\stackrel{\sim}{\sim}$ | \％ |  | $\stackrel{\square}{\circ}$ | $\stackrel{-}{-}$ |  |  |  |  |


| 8 |
| :---: |

$$
\stackrel{\circ}{\sim} \stackrel{\circ}{\square}
$$

$$
|\stackrel{\circ}{\circ}|
$$

$$
\stackrel{\infty}{\infty}
$$

$$
\stackrel{8}{0}
$$

$$
\underset{\mathrm{m}}{\mathrm{~N}}
$$

$$
\begin{array}{l|l|l|}
\hline 0 & \circ \\
& & \\
\hline
\end{array}
$$

REVCORE－1 algorithm programs

$$
500
$$

$$
\stackrel{\otimes}{\infty}
$$

$$
\stackrel{\circ}{\circ}
$$

0000000000000000000


| ～ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|l\|l\|l\|} \hline 0 \\ \underline{y y} \end{array}$ | \％ | $\stackrel{7}{7}$ | $\stackrel{\circ}{\square}$ | $\stackrel{\circ}{\circ}$ | ㅎ | $\stackrel{\square}{7}$ | $0$ | $\mp$ | ¢ | $\stackrel{\square}{4}$ | $\stackrel{\sim}{~}$ | $\bigcirc$ | － | $\stackrel{\square}{\square}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | $\stackrel{\text { 亭 }}{ }$ |  | \％ | $\stackrel{2}{0}$ | $\stackrel{\wedge}{\circ}$ | $\stackrel{\square}{\square}$ | \％ | त్ర̆ | $\stackrel{\square}{\circ}$ | 5 | $\stackrel{\circ}{\circ}$ | $\stackrel{\circ}{\circ}$ | \％ | $\stackrel{\square}{\circ}$ | \％ |
| $\stackrel{\square}{\sim}$ | 旁 |  | $\stackrel{5}{\circ}$ | \％ | $\stackrel{\text { ¢ }}{ }$ | $\stackrel{\square}{-}$ | 帥 | \％ | $\stackrel{0}{0}$ | $\stackrel{\square}{\circ}$ | \％ | $\stackrel{\otimes}{\circ}$ | $\stackrel{\square}{\circ}$ | \％ | $\stackrel{\circ}{\circ}$ |
| $\because$ | 㙖 | $\cdots$ | $\stackrel{\square}{\circ}$ | ô | $\stackrel{+}{-}$ | ～ | ～ | ¢ | ¢ | \％ | ¢ | ¢ ${ }_{\circ}^{\circ}$ | ） | ～ | 号 |
| ${ }^{\text {® }}$ | 云 | \％ | $\bigcirc$ | － | － | － | $\bigcirc$ | － | － | － |  |  |  | － | － |
| － | $\leq$ | 9 | － | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | － | － | － | － | － |  | － |  | － | － |
| $\leq$ | 交 | $\bigcirc$ | \％ | $\stackrel{\text { a }}{ }$ | $\stackrel{\circ}{\circ}$ | \％ | 幺幺 | $\stackrel{\sim}{\circ}$ | ¢ | f | ลิ | － | \％ | \％ | － |

REVERB-1 algorithm programs

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | PAGE |  | 1 A | 1 B | 10 | 2 A | 2B | 2 C | 2D | 3A | 3B | 3 C | 3D | 4A | 4 B | 4 C | 4 D | 5 A | 5B | 50 | 50 |
| No | Name | Notes | Mix | In | Out | Decay | xLow | xHigh | Diffuse | Shape | xSize | PreDly | RevFeed | HiCut | Att | Lo-Xovr | Hi-Xovr | InitLev | RevLev | RWidth | I-XFeed |
| \# | 8 CHAR. |  | \% | dB | dB | s |  |  |  |  | $\times$ | ms | ms | Hz | dB | Hz | Hz | dB | dB |  |  |
| 1 | Church 1 | Very bright long reverb for everything | 25 | 0 | 0 | 4.2 | 0.7 | 0.18 | 11 | fan | 1.25 | 30 | 0 | 500 | -30 | 125 | 8K | 0 | 0 | 100 | on |
| 2 | Church 2 | Warm reverb for everything | 20 | 0 | 0 | 2 | 1.2 | 0.6 | 11 | h.shoe | 0.63 | 27 | 50 | 3K15 | 0 | 315 | 8K | -4 | 0 | 100 | on |
| 3 | 480 Hall | General purpose bright plate | 20 | 0 | 0 | 3.5 | 1 | 0.45 | 13 | fan | 0.8 | 30 | 20 | 6K3 | -1.5 | 250 | 8K | 0 | -2 | 100 | on |
| 4 | VocalDry | Plate for vocal | 30 | 0 | 0 | 0.6 | 1 | 0.4 | 6 | hall | 0.4 | 18 | 15 | 2K5 | -6 | 250 | 8K | 0 | -12.5 | 75 | on |
| 5 | VocalWet | Plate for vocal / everything | 25 | 0 | 0 | 1.2 | 0.6 | 0.6 | 11 | h.shoe | 0.63 | 0 | 50 | 3K15 | -8 | 500 | 6K3 | -4 | 0 | 100 | on |
| 6 | ManıBBox | Dry stereo spread environment | 40 | 0 | 0 | 0.3 | 0.2 | 1.5 | 6 | hall | 0.2 | 20 | 26 | 4K | -6 | 250 | 8K | 0 | -12 | 70 | on |
| 7 | Locker | Environment for perc. | 25 | 0 | 0 | 0.8 | 0.9 | 0.8 | 6 | prism | 0.4 | 4 | 0 | 4K | -24 | 3K15 | 3K15 | 0 | -6 | 70 | on |
| 8 | DryHouse | Short bright stereo spread | 25 | 0 | 0 | 0.5 | 1 | 0.4 | 6 | hall | 0.63 | 22 | 0 | 6K3 | -6 | 250 | 8K | 0 | -10 | 20 | on |
| 9 | WetHouse | For vocal / guitar | 30 | 0 | 0 | 1.4 | 1 | 0.4 | 8 | hall | 0.63 | 22 | 0 | 6K3 | -6 | 250 | 8K | 0 | -10 | 20 | on |
| 10 | Stage | Environment program | 20 | 0 | 0 | 2 | 1 | 0.38 | 7 | hall | 0.63 | 22 | 75 | 2K5 | -20 | 250 | 8K | 0 | 0 | 85 | on |
| 11 | Rattle | Low density program for vocal / inst. | 25 | 0 | 0 | 1.4 | 1 | 0.4 | 1 | h.shoe | 2.5 | 18 | 18 | 4K0 | -6 | 250 | 8K | 0 | -10 | 100 | on |
| 12 | ShortCut | Short percussion reverb | 30 | 0 | 0 | 0.3 | 1 | 1 | 6 | h.shoe | 0.63 | 7 | 40 | 5 K | -25 | 250 | 5K | -5 | 0 | 70 | on |
| 13 | SlapHall | Slapback type rev. for vocal / inst. | 30 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0.45 | 6 | hall | 0.316 | 120 | 60 | 6K3 | -6 | 250 | 8K | 0 | 0 | 90 | on |
| 14 | Ugly 1 | Short mellow room for fx. BD | 30 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0.65 | 0.45 | 5 | prism | 1.25 | 10 | 30 | 800 | -30 | 800 | 800 | 0 | -3 | 70 | on |
| 15 | Ugly 2 | As 14, but longer | 30 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0.1 | 5 | hall | 1.25 | 10 | 30 | 800 | -30 | 800 | 8K | 0 | -3 | 60 | on |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

[^16]|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | PAGE |  | 1 A | 1 B | 1 C | 2A | 2B | 2 C | 2D | 3A | 3B | 3 C | 3 D | 4A | 4B | 4 C | 4D | 5A | 5B | 5 C | 5D | 6A | 6 B | 6 C | 6D |
| No | Name | Notes | Mix | In | Out | Decay | xLow | xHigh | Diffuse | Shape | Size | PreDly | Revfeed | Hicut | Att | LoXovr | HiXovr | InitLev | RevLev | Rwidth | I-XFeed | RevDiff | BuildUp | IAttack | IDecay |
| \# | 8 CHAR |  | \% | dB | dB | s | $\times$ | X | rel |  | $x$ | ms | ms | hz | dB | hz | hz | dB | dB | \% |  | $\%$ | \% | dB | dB |
| 16 | WoddFIr | Small room | 25 | 0 | 0 | 0.6 | 0.6 | 1.14 | 8 | prism | 1 | 13.9 | 7.2 | flat | 0 | 200 | flat | -3 | 0 | 100 | on | 0 | 12 | -3 | -3 |
| 17 | StoneWal | Small room | 25 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0.3 | 1 | 5 | prism | 0.08 | 50 | 17 | flat | 0 | 1K | 8K | -0.5 | 0 | 63 | on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 18 | HardRoom | Small room | 25 | 0 | 0 | 0.5 | 0.09 | 1.16 | 10 | prism | 0.08 | 12 | 17 | flat | 0 | 1K | 8K | -0.5 | 0 | 63 | on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 19 | Soft-1 | Small room | 30 | 0 | 0 | 0.3 | 1 | 0.9 | 1 | hall | 0.1 | 0 | 0 | 2K | -6 | 250 | 2K | -5 | 0 | 80 | on | 0 | 0 | 0 | -10 |
| 20 | Soft-2 | Small room | 40 | 0 | 0 | 0.5 | 1 | 0.9 | 1 | hall | 0.1 | 0 | 0 | 2K | -6 | 250 | 2K | -5 | 0 | 80 | on | 0 | 0 | 0 | -10 |
| 21 | Water | Effect | 60 | 0 | 0 | 3.2 | 2.5 | 1 | 16 | fan | 4 | 200 | 13 | 630 | -30 | 100 | 125 | 0 | 0 | 100 | on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 22 | Nuclear | Effect | 80 | 0 | 0 | 30 | 2.5 | 1 | 16 | h.shoe | 4 | 200 | 100 | 500 | -30 | 100 | 100 | -97 | 0 | 100 | on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 23 | Tunnel | Stereo tunnel effect | 25 | 0 | 0 | 2.6 | 1 | 1 | 16 | prism | 4 | 160 | 9.4 | flat | -3 | 20 | 3.15 K | -0.5 | 0 | 13 | on | 0 | 0 | 0 | -17 |
| 24 | Concret1 | Concrete room | 60 | 0 | 0 | 1.9 | 0.9 | 2 | 8 | prism | 1.6 | 20 | 0 | 2K | -5 | 250 | 16K | 0 | -3 | 100 | on | 0 | 38 | -6 | -6 |
| 25 | Concret2 | Concrete room | 30 | 0 | 0 | 1.9 | 0.9 | 2 | 8 | prism | 1.6 | 20 | 0 | 2K | -5 | 250 | 16K | 0 | -2.5 | 100 | on | 0 | 38 | -6 | -6 |
| 26 | BigLead | Big guitar concert sound | 35 | 0 | 0 | 3.1 | 0.67 | 1.42 | 7 | h.shoe | 2.5 | 66 | 7 | 6.3 K | -6 | 200 | 2K | -2.5 | -7 | 84 | on | 0 | 10 | -40 | -40 |
| 27 | AutoPark | Large autopark | 30 | 0 | 0 | 3.4 | 1.3 | 1.15 | 14 | fan | 1.6 | 135 | 10 | 10K | -1 | 250 | 5 K | -25 | -2 | 100 | on | 0 | 90 | -10.5 | -10 |
| 28 | Vocal1 | For vocal | 34 | 0 | 0 | 1.5 | 1.19 | 0.7 | 11 | h.shoe | 0.63 | 27 | 70 | 3.15 K | 0 | 315 | 6.3K | -4 | 0 | 100 | on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 29 | Vocal2 | For vocal | 34 | 0 | 0 | 2.4 | 1.19 | 0.65 | 11 | h.shoe | 0.63 | 27 | 70 | 1.6 K | 0 | 315 | 6.3K | -4 | 0 | 100 | on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 30 | Vocal3 | For vocal | 34 | 0 | 0 | 1.5 | 1.2 | 0.8 | 16 | prism | 2 | 20 | 70 | 10K | -6 | 500 | 5 K | 0 | 0 | 100 | on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |


|  | VER | B-3 algorithm programs |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Fbame |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | PAGE |  | 1 A | 1 B | 10 | 2A | 2B | 2 C | 2D | 3A | 3B | 3 C | 3D | 4A | 4B | 4 C | 4D | 5A | 5B | 50 |
| No | Name | Notes | Mix | In | Out | Decay | xLow | xLoMid | xHigh | Diffuse | Lo-Xovr | LM-Xovr | Hi-Xovr | Predly | Distans | HiCut | Att | ModRate | ModDpth | DifType |
| \# | 8 CHAR. |  | \% | dB | dB | s | $\times$ | x | $\times$ |  | Hz | Hz | Hz | ms | dB | Hz | dB |  | \% |  |
| 40 | GM-Hall | Warm reverb for various purposes; vocals | 55 | 0 | 0 | 5.9 | 0.01 | 1 | 0.07 | 58 | 20 | 200 | 4K | 80 | 15 | 10K | -40 | 60 | 100 | Smooth1 |
| 41 | Ovrmuch2 | Effect, replaces old REVERB-1 preset | 55 | 0 | 0 | 7.5 | 0.7 | 1.68 | 0.4 | 85 | 63 | 1K | 8K | 20 | 15 | 2,5K | -7.5 | 27 | 24 | Smooth2 |
| 42 | WoodHall | Warm reverb for harpe and guitar | 23 | 0 | 0 | 2.4 | 2.1 | 1.5 | 0.1 | 70 | 63 | 800 | 4K | 25 | 13 | 2 K | -15 | 22 | 60\% | Smooth2 |
| 43 | RichVerb | Short and bright. Good for almost anything | 32 | 0 | 0 | 1.6 | 0.6 | 1 | 0.85 | 27 | 40 | 200 | 10K | 1 | 15 | 4K | -6 | 70 | 95 | Smooth1 |
| 44 | BigBlue2 | Warm reverb, replaces old REVERB-1 preset | 25 | 0 | 0 | 3.5 | 0.8 | 1.3 | 0.3 | 45 | 125 | 630 | 4K | 27 | 12 | 1,6K | -8 | 27 | 35 | Short1 |
| 45 | Locker2 | Short reverb with early reflections; vocal, guitar | 39 | 0 | 0 | 1.2 | 0.6 | 1.3 | 0.35 | 25 | 40 | 800 | 6,3K | 6 | 7 | 2,5K | -6 | 28 | 55 | Short2 |
| 46 | 5000Hall | Bright reverb for general puposes; vocal, drums | 28 | 0 | 0 | 2.6 | 0.6 | 1 | 0.45 | 90 | 40 | 200 | 5 K | 12 | 14 | 4K | -5 | 27 | 65 | Smooth1 |
| 47 | SteelPIt | Emul. of EMT140 (tube) steelplate. Try also w. pre-delay | 30 | 0 | 0 | 2.8 | 0.65 | 2.5 | 0.3 | 80 | 315 | 1,6K | 2,5K | 1 | 15 | 2,5K | -14 | 20 | 55 | Short1 |
| 48 | GoldPIt | Emul. of EMT240 goldplate. Try also with pre-delay | 28 | 0 | 0 | 4.4 | 0.9 | 1.65 | 0.3 | 72 | 100 | 630 | 4K | 1 | 15 | 5 K | -12 | 12 | 30 | Short1 |
| 49 | PercVerb | Short, general purpose reverb. Percussion and drums | 31 | 0 | 0 | 1.1 | 1.47 | 1.14 | 0.37 | 50 | 630 | 1,6K | 4K | 10 | 13 | 6,3K | -6.5 | 100 | 50 | Smooth2 |
| 50 | KickVerb | Very short deep reverb. Kickdrums and Toms. | 39 | 0 | 0 | 0.6 | 2.5 | 1.14 | 0.56 | 50 | 200 | 1,6K | 4K | 10 | 13 | 8K | -9 | 100 | 50 | Short2 |
| 51 | Dense-1 | Bright hall without modulation | 55 | 0 | 0 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 61 | 20 | 200 | 16K | 10 | 5 | 16K | -10 | 100 | 0 | Smooth1 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |



| CHORUS-1 algorithm programs |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\xrightarrow[\text { OLGitai audio mainfanme }]{\square} \square \square$ |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Page |  | 1 A | 1 B | 1 C | 1D | 2 A | 2 B | 2 C | 2 D | 3 A | 3B | 3 C | 3D |
| No | Name | Notes | Mix | InLev | OutLev | Phase | Delay | FB | Speed | Depth | FbLocut | FbHiCut | HiCut | Att |
| \# | 8 CHAR. |  | \% | dB | dB | deg | ms | \% | Hz | \% | Hz | Hz | Hz | dB |
| 59 | The King | Delay + stereo spread for vocal / guitar | 40 | 0 | 0 | 90 | 120 | 20 | 0.56 | 15 | 100 | 4K | 6K3 | -6 |
| 60 | VocDelay | Delay + stereo spread for vocal / guitar | 20 | 0 | 0 | 90 | 220 | 20 | 0.28 | 5 | 100 | 8K | 10K | -6 |
| 61 | Echoplex | Old tape echo with wow and flutter | 35 | 0 | 0 | 90 | 425 | 35 | 0.141 | 20 | 400 | 2K | 1K6 | -18 |
| 62 | 2Track | Double track with stereo spread | 40 | 0 | 0 | 90 | 40 | 20 | 0.28 | 5 | 100 | 8K | 10K | -3 |
| 63 | SlowMo | Slow Chorus | 50 | 0 | 0 | 90 | 12 | 0 | 0.16 | 50 | off | off | 3K15 | -10 |
| 64 | Flanger | Normal Flanger | 50 | 0 | 0 | 90 | 5 | 85 | 0.56 | 8 | 200 | 4 K | off | off |
| 65 | Hi-Trash | Flanger with high pitch feedback | 50 | 0 | 0 | 90 | 1 | 93 | 0.2 | 8 | 800 | off | off | off |
| 66 | Lo-Trash | Flanger with low pitch feedback | 50 | 0 | 0 | 90 | 1 | 99 | 0.2 | 13 | off | 1K | off | off |
| 67 | Plain | Normal Chorus | 50 | 0 | 0 | 90 | 10 | 0 | 1 | 14 | 0 | off | off | off |
| 68 | Seashore | Just a feeling | 70 | 0 | 0 | 90 | 30 | 30 | 4 | 3 | 400 | off | off | off |
| 69 | Flow | Chorus with delay for a slow guitar | 40 | 0 | 0 | 90 | 370 | 31 | 1 | 14 | 200 | off | off | off |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |


|  | © | 苞 | 䘱 | 앙 | $\stackrel{\square}{\circ}$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $]$ | \％ | 気 |  | \％ | \％ | \％ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | \％ |  |  | $\stackrel{\circ}{-}$ | $\sim$ | $\stackrel{\sim}{\sim}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $\rangle$ | － | － | － | － | 言 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | \％ | － |  | $\stackrel{\sim}{\sim}$ | ～ | $\infty$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | $¢_{6}$ | － |  | $\bigcirc$ | ¢ | $\stackrel{\sim}{m}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | \％ | cin | cı | － | $\infty$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | $\bigcirc$ | － | ${ }^{\text {a }}$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | $\%$ | 盛 | \％ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 4 |  | $\dot{¢}^{\circ}$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | \％ | $\stackrel{1}{4}$ | $\frac{8}{8}$ | $\bigcirc$ | $?$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | \％ | $\stackrel{\text { N }}{\substack{\text { in }}}$ | N｜ | $\stackrel{\square}{\square}$ | ¢ | $\stackrel{\square}{\text { ¢ }}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | \％ | 立 | 号 | $\bigcirc$ | ？ | － |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 8 | － | 郎N | $\stackrel{\square}{\square}$ | ¢ | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{¢}}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | ¢ | N | － | $\stackrel{\square}{0}$ | $\stackrel{\square}{0}$ | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{6}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | － |  | $\stackrel{9}{9}$ | $\bigcirc$ | － | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | $\stackrel{\sim}{0}$ | － | ${ }^{\circ}$ | 皆 | $\stackrel{\substack{0}}{0}$ | － |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | ¢ | $\stackrel{\square}{9}$ | $\stackrel{\square}{9}$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | － | N | － | $\stackrel{\square}{\square}$ | $\stackrel{\sim}{\square}$ | $\stackrel{\square}{7}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | $\stackrel{\sim}{\sim}$ | N | － | $\bigcirc$ | － | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | \％ | － |  | $\infty$ | $\sim$ | $\underset{\sim}{\sim}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $\begin{aligned} & \boldsymbol{\omega} \\ & \stackrel{E}{0} \end{aligned}$ | § | 宕 | 家 | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $\begin{aligned} & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & \hline \mathbf{0} \end{aligned}$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\stackrel{3}{0}$ | 号 | － | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $\stackrel{\text { 를 }}{\varepsilon}$ | $\stackrel{-}{-}$ | $\stackrel{3}{\underline{e}}$ | \％ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 를 | $\stackrel{4}{4}$ |  | ${ }^{\circ}{ }^{\circ}$ | \％ | \％ | f |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | $\stackrel{4}{4}$ |  | － |  | （1） | － |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $\stackrel{-1}{\square}$ | ${ }_{0}$ |  | 效 | $\stackrel{8}{3}$ |  | ｜r｜r |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $\boldsymbol{\sim}$ |  | 2 | \＃ | $\bigcirc$ | $\Sigma$ | N |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

$\qquad$
$\stackrel{\infty}{\circ}$
$\stackrel{\infty}{\sim}$
$\stackrel{\infty}{\sim}$ $\stackrel{\infty}{\rightleftharpoons} \stackrel{\infty}{\ulcorner }$ $\stackrel{\infty}{\sim} \stackrel{ }{\sim}$ $\stackrel{\infty}{\sim} \stackrel{\infty}{\sim}$ $\stackrel{\infty}{\sim}$ $\stackrel{\infty}{\sim} \stackrel{\infty}{\circ}$





| $\bigcirc$ | 颜 | N | $\stackrel{\text { ¢ }}{\text { N }}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\stackrel{\infty}{\square}$ | 交 |  | $\stackrel{\infty}{\sim}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $\stackrel{\sim}{\sim}$ | 亳 |  | ～ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 4 | 茄 |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $\stackrel{8}{\circ}$ | を | $\stackrel{\square}{\circ}$ | $\stackrel{\sim}{N}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $\stackrel{5}{6}$ | 烒 | N | ¢ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ค | $\stackrel{\text { ® }}{\text { ® }}$ | $\stackrel{\sim}{6}$ | － |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $\stackrel{\sim}{\sim}$ | 品 | $\therefore$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $\stackrel{\sim}{\sim}$ | $\stackrel{0}{\text { L }}$ | $\therefore$ | 운 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| § | 亳 |  | － |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $\bigcirc$ | 京 | ¢ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $\stackrel{\square}{-}$ | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{\text { ¢ }}$ | $\square$ | － |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $\leqslant$ | $\stackrel{\times}{\underline{x}}$ | \％ | $\stackrel{\leftarrow}{6}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

$\square$
$\square$
 T ， ， ， －



 off －

| $\pm$ |
| :---: |

－


t．c．electronic

SAMPLE-1 algorithm programs.

|  | PAGE |  | $1 A$ | 1B | $1 C$ | 2A | 2B |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| No | Name | Notes | Mix | Inlev | Outliev | Sample | Action |
| \# | 8 CHAR |  | $\%$ | dB | dB |  | Mode |

$$
\begin{array}{c|c|c|}
\hline \mathrm{D} & 4 \mathrm{~A} & \\
\hline \text { ne } & \text { Recmode } & \text { R } \\
\hline \text { S } & \text { Mode } & \\
\hline 0 & \text { mono } & \\
\hline & &
\end{array}
$$

$\qquad$

$$
\begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|c|c|}
\hline 2 C & 2 D & 3 A & 3 B & 3 C & 3 D \\
\hline \text { Counter } & \text { Status } & \text { Start } & \text { Fine } & \text { End } & \text { Fine } \\
\hline \text { Sek. } & & \text { Sek } & \text { ms } & \text { Sek. } & \text { mS } \\
\hline 0 & \text { ready? } & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
\hline & & & & \\
\hline
\end{array}
$$

$$
-25
$$





| 2 | Scale (\%) | PreDly (ms) | Widih (\%) | Lastiap |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 100 | 0 | 100 | 18 |




TAPFAC Algorithm presets
IAPFAC Algorithm presets



| 2 | Scale (\%) | PreDiy (ms) | Width (\%) | LastIap |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 20 | 0 | 100 | 18 |


| $\mathbf{3}$ | Tap | Delay (ms) | Level (\%) | Pan ( $\mathbf{1 0}$ ) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\mathbf{1}$ | 3.4 | 32 | 8 L |  |
| $\mathbf{2}$ | 15,5 | 71 | 4 R |  |
| $\mathbf{3}$ | 31.5 | 63 | 7 L |  |
| $\mathbf{4}$ | 33.9 | 56 | 5 R |  |
| $\mathbf{5}$ | 38.1 | 50 | 10 L |  |
| $\mathbf{6}$ | 59.2 | 45 | 10 R |  |
| $\mathbf{7}$ | 55.6 | 40 | 4 R |  |
| $\mathbf{8}$ | 83.4 | 35 | 10 L |  |
| $\mathbf{9}$ | 84.5 | 31 | 10 R |  |
| $\mathbf{1 0}$ | 93.6 | 28 | 5 R |  |
| $\mathbf{1 1}$ | 134 | 25 | 7 L |  |
| $\mathbf{1 2}$ | 152.9 | 22 | 5 R |  |
| $\mathbf{1 3}$ | 205.2 | 20 | 6 L |  |
| $\mathbf{1 4}$ | 248.7 | 18 | 5 R |  |
| $\mathbf{1 5}$ | 293.2 | 16 | 6 L |  |
| $\mathbf{1 6}$ | 400.3 | 14 | 7 R |  |
| $\mathbf{1 7}$ | 493.4 | 12 | 6 L |  |
| $\mathbf{1 8}$ | 615.3 | 11 | 7 R |  |



| 5 | Speed (Hz) | Depth (\%) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 0.2 | 0 |



| 3 | Tap | Delay（ms） | Level（\％） | Pan（ $\pm 10$ ） |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  |  |  |  |

$\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{\circ} \underset{ }{\circ} \stackrel{\substack{\circ}}{\circ} \circ$

| 80 |
| :---: |
| 100 |
| 100 |
| 100 |
| 100 |

100




ノ $15 \square \square \square$






"

$4 \underset{0}{6} \begin{gathered}\infty \\ \underset{0}{\varepsilon} \\ 0\end{gathered}$
$\infty$
0
0
0
0
$i$

. - -lacan- -


| Preset: 201 | Use this preset for: |
| :---: | :--- |
| 2BandCom |  |



| 2 | LowCut | Lo-Xovr | Hi-Xovr | Softclip |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 2.0 Hz | 10 W -off | 400 Hz | on |


| 3 LEVELS_ | low, | mid | high |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Bnd-Lev | 0.0 dB | -0.5 dB | -2.0 dB |
| OdB ref | -8.0 dB | -8.0 dB | -8.0 dB |
| Meters | 5 dB | 5 dB | 5 dB |


| 4 | COMPRES | low | mid | high |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Threshold | 0.0 dB | -7.5dB | $-6.5 \mathrm{~dB}$ |
|  | Ratio | $2.0>1$ | $2.0>1$ | $2.0>1$ |
|  | Gain | 0.0 dB | 3.7 dB | 3.2 dB |
|  | Attack | 20 ms | 20 ms | 20 ms |
|  | Release | 500 ms | 500ms | 500ms |
|  | FeedFwd | 10.0ms | 10.0ms | 10.0 ms |
|  | Crest | RMS | RMS | RMS |


| $\frac{\frac{\rightharpoonup}{0}}{\frac{0}{e}}$ | $\left.\begin{aligned} & \infty \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \end{aligned} \right\rvert\,$ | $\stackrel{\Gamma}{\wedge}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \infty \\ & \underset{\sim}{\tilde{j}} \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | $\bigcirc$ | ¢ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\frac{0}{E}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \infty \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ |  | $\underset{\sim}{\infty}$ | $\stackrel{\sim}{\sim}$ | ¢ |
| $3$ | $\begin{aligned} & \infty \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ |  | $\begin{aligned} & \infty \\ & \underset{\sim}{c} \\ & \underset{\sim}{2} \end{aligned}$ | $\stackrel{\sim}{\sim}$ | ¢ |
|  |  | $\begin{array}{\|l} \mathbf{o} \\ \hline \frac{1}{\mathbf{O}} \\ \hline \mathbf{4} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \underline{y} \\ & \frac{0}{0} \\ & \hline \frac{1}{4} \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ \hline \mathbf{y} \\ \hline \boldsymbol{x} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \mathbf{0} \\ & 3 \\ & \mathbf{3} \\ & \hline \mathbf{0} \\ & \mathbf{0} \\ & \mathbf{1} \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ |
| 5 |  |  |  |  |  |

6 EXPAND





## DYNAMIC1 Algorithm

| Preset: 200 | Use this preset for: |
| :---: | :--- |
| 1BandCom |  |

 | 2 | LowCut | Lo-Xovi | Hi-Xovi | SoffClip |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 2.0 Hz | low-off | mid-off | on |

| 3 | LEVELS | low | mid | high |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Bnd-Lev | 0.0 dB | 0.0 dB | 0.0dB |
|  | OdB ref | -8.0dB | -8.0dB | -8.0dB |
|  | Meters | 5 dB | 5 dB | 5 dB |

4 | COMPRES | low | low | mid |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Threshold | -4.0 dB | -4.0 dB | -4.0 dB |
| Ratio | $2.0>1$ | $2.0>1$ | $2.0>1$ |
| Gain | 2.0 dB | 2.0 dB | 2.0 dB |
| Attack | 20 ms | 20 ms | 20 ms |
| Release | 500 ms | 500 ms | 500 ms |
| FeedFwd | 10.0 ms | 10.0 ms | 10.0 ms |
| Crest | RMS | RMS | RMS |

| 5 | LIMITER | low | mid | high |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Threshold | 0.0dB | 0.0 dB | 0.0 dB |
|  | Ratio | infin>1 | infin>1 | infin>1 |
|  | Attack | 1.4 ms | 1.4 ms | 1.4 ms |
|  | Release | 1.4 s | 1.4 s | 1.0s |
|  | FeedFwd | 1.0ms | 1.0 ms | 1.0 ms |

6 EXPAND $\sim$ mid

 | Ratio | off | off | off |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Atack | 1.0 ms | 1.0 ms | 0.3 ms |

| Ratio |
| :--- |
| Attack |
| Rease |


| Atiack |
| :--- |
| Release |


| Range |
| :--- |




| 3 | LEVELS | 10w | mid | hich |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Bnd-Lev |  |  |  |
|  | OdB ref |  |  |  |
|  | Meters |  |  |  |


| $\begin{aligned} & \frac{5}{0} \\ & \underline{E} \end{aligned}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{E}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $3$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | $\begin{array}{\|c} \frac{0}{0} \\ \hline \frac{1}{\omega} \\ \frac{1}{c} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 읓 } \\ & \frac{1}{\mathbf{O}} \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | $$ | $\begin{array}{\|l} \underline{y} \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ \frac{1}{4} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ \hline 0 \\ \hline \boldsymbol{Q} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l} \hline 0 \\ 3 \\ \mathbf{3} \\ \hline \mathbf{0} \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ \hline \end{array}$ | 㐫 |
| + |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |


| 5 | LIMITER | low | mid | high |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Threshold |  |  |  |
|  | Ratio |  |  |  |
|  | Attack |  |  |  |
|  | Release |  |  |  |
|  | FeedFwd |  |  |  |


| 6 | EXPAND | low | mid | high |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Threshold |  |  |  |
|  | Ratio |  |  |  |
|  | Attack |  |  |  |
|  | Release |  |  |  |
|  | Range |  |  |  |



## 4. -lontan-

| Preset: 204 | Use this preset for: |
| :---: | :--- |
| TapeSim2 |  |


| 1 | M1X | INLEV | OUTLEV | Balance |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 100\% | OdB | 0.0 dB | center |


| 2 | LowCut | Lo-Xovr | Hi-Xovr | SoftClip |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 2.0 hz | 315 Hz | 4 KHz | on |


| 3 | LEVELS | low | mid | IIdh |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Bnd-Lev | -1.0 dB | -3.5 dB | -8.0 dB |
| OdB ref | 0 dB | 0 dB | 0 dB |  |
| Meters | 20 dB | 20 dB | 20 dB |  |


| 4 | COMPRES | low | mid | high |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Threshold | -14dB | $-14 \mathrm{~dB}$ | $-18 \mathrm{~dB}$ |
|  | Ratio | $3.2>1$ | $3.2>1$ | $3.2>1$ |
|  | Gain | 9.6 dB | 9.6 dB | 12.3 dB |
|  | Attack | 3.0 ms | 2.0 ms | 1.4 ms |
|  | Release | 1.0 s | 700 ms | 300 ms |
|  | FeedFwd | 4 ms | 3 ms | 2.5 ms |
|  | Crest | 12dB | 12 dB | 12 dB |


| 5 | LMITER | low | mid | high |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Threshold | -1.0dB | $-1.0 \mathrm{~dB}$ | -6.0dB |
|  | Ratio | infin>1 | infin>1 | infin>1 |
|  | Attack | 100us | 100us | 50us |
|  | Release | 300ms | 140ms | 50 ms |
|  | FeedFwd | 0.1 ms | 0.1 ms | 0.1 ms |


| 6 | EXPAND |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Threshold |  |  |  |
| Ratio | off | off | off |
| Attack |  |  |  |
| Release |  |  |  |
| Range |  |  |  |


 - 1 Tr

 | 2 | LowCut | Lo-Xovi | Hi-Xovi | SoffClip |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 2.0 hz | 400 Hz | 2.5 KHz | on |

| 3 | LEVELS | low | mid | high |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Bnd-Lev | OdB | -0.5dB | -3.5dB |
|  | OdB ref | OdB | OdB | OdB |
|  | Meters | 10dB | 10dB | 10dB | 4 COMPRES low mid min migh 4 | COMPRES | M. low | mid |  |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| Threshold | -14 dB | -14 dB | -18 dB | | Threshold | -14 dB | -14 dB | -18 dB |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Ratio | $1.6>1$ | $1.6>1$ | $18>1$ | | Ratio | $1.6>1$ | $1.6>1$ | $1.8>1$ |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Gain | 5.2 dB | 5.2 dB | 7.9 dB | | Gain | 3.0 ms | 2.0 ms | 1.4 ms |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Attack | 1 s | 700 ms | 300 ms |
| Release |  |  |  | | Release | 1 s | 700 ms | 300 ms |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | | FeedFwd | 4.0 ms | 3.0 ms | 2.5 ms |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Crest | 12 dB | 12 dB | 12 dB |

 5 \begin{tabular}{|l|l|l|l|c|}
\hline LIMITER <br>
\cline { 2 - 5 } \& Ihreshold \& -1.5 dB \& -2.5 dB \& -4.0 dB <br>
\hline

 

\hline Ratio \& infin>1 \& infin>1 \& infin>1 <br>
\hline Alack \& 100 l \& 100 l \& 50 us <br>
\hline

 

\hline Attack \& 100 us \& 100 us \& 50 us <br>
\hline

 

\hline Release \& 200 ms \& 1.0 ms \& 1.0 ms <br>
\hline

 6 EXPAND low mid high 6 EXPAND ${ }^{2}$ |l|ll| low 

Threshold <br>
\hline Ratio <br>
\hline
\end{tabular}

Attack

| Release |
| :--- |
| Range |




7 毋ا Po




 $\qquad$


 | Preset: 206 | Use this preset for: |
| :---: | :--- |
| RockLim1 |  |

 | 2 | LowCut | Lo-Xovr | Hi-Xovr | SoffClip |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 2.0 hz | 400 Hz | 3.15 KHz | on |

3 LEVESS_


| $\frac{\stackrel{5}{0}}{\mathbf{c}}$ | $\left\|\begin{array}{c} \infty \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ \infty \\ 1 \end{array}\right\|$ | $\left\|\begin{array}{c} \stackrel{\wedge}{c} \\ \stackrel{c}{c} \\ -= \end{array}\right\|$ | $\left\|\begin{array}{l} 2 \\ \hline 8 \\ \hline-2 \end{array}\right\|$ | \% |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\frac{0}{E}$ | $\left\lvert\, \begin{gathered} \infty \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ \hline \end{gathered}\right.$ | $\left\lvert\, \begin{aligned} & \underset{\substack{\hat{C} \\ \underset{C}{c} \\ \hline}}{ } \end{aligned}\right.$ | $\left\|\begin{array}{l} \text { s. } \\ \underset{\sim}{\mathrm{O}} \end{array}\right\|$ | $\begin{aligned} & \infty \\ & \varepsilon_{0} \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | $\underbrace{\infty}_{0}$ |
| 웅 | $\left\|\begin{array}{c} \infty \\ 0 \\ \stackrel{0}{0} \\ \underset{\sim}{2} \end{array}\right\|$ | $\left\lvert\, \begin{aligned} & \stackrel{\wedge}{c} \\ & \stackrel{c}{c} \\ & \underset{C}{n} \end{aligned}\right.$ | $\left\lvert\, \begin{aligned} & 2 \\ & 0 \\ & \hline 8 \\ & \hline-2 \end{aligned}\right.$ | $\begin{aligned} & \infty \\ & \varepsilon \\ & 0 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \infty \\ & \underset{c}{\infty} \\ & \end{aligned}$ |
|  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \circ \\ & \hline 0.1 \\ & \hline 0 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|l} \text { 든 } \\ \frac{0}{4} \\ \hline \end{array}$ |  | $\begin{aligned} & 0 \\ & 3 \\ & \frac{1}{0} \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ |
| م |  |  |  |  |  |

6 EXPAND 6 EXPAND | EXPAND | low |  |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| Threshold | -40.0 dB | -40.0 dB |
| Ratio | off | off |








$\stackrel{\sim}{2}$


## DYNAMIC1 Algorithm

| Preset: 205 | Use this preset for: |
| :---: | :--- |
| Loudness |  |

## 

| 2 | LowCut | Lo-Xovr | Hi-Xovr | SoftClip |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 2.0 hz | 200 Hz | 4.0 KHz | on |


| 3 | LEVELS | low | mid | high |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Bnd-Lev | 1.0dB | -1.5dB | 1.0dB |
|  | OdB ref | -6dB | -6dB | -6dB |
|  | Meters | 10dB | 10dB | 10dB |

4 | COMPRES | low | mid | high |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Threshold | -10 dB | -15 dB | -12.5 dB |
| Ratio | $8.0>1$ | $3.2>1$ | $5.6>1$ |
| Gain | 8.7 dB | 10.3 dB | 10.2 dB |
| Attack | 2.0 ms | 2.0 ms | 2.0 ms |
| Release | 50 ms | 1.0 s | 1.0 s |
| FeedFwd | 1.0 ms | 10 ms | 10 ms |
| Crest | rms | peak | peak |

5 | LIMITER | low | low | mid |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Threshold | -2.0 dB | -2.0 dB | -2.0 dB |
| Ratio | infin>1 | infin>1 | infin> $>1$ |
| Attack | 50 us | 50 us | 50 us |
| Release | 200 ms | 200 ms | 200 ms |
| FeedFwd | 3.0 ms | 1.0 ms | 1.0 ms |



| Ratio |
| :--- |
| Attack |


| Attack |
| :--- |
| Release |
| Range |



| 3 | LEVELS | low | mid | high |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Bnd－Lev | －3．0dB | －3．0dB | －6．0dB |
|  | OdB ref | 0.0 dB | 0.0 dB | 0.0 dB |
|  | Meters | 10 dB | 10dB | 10dB |


| $\frac{\underline{5}}{\overline{0}}$ | $: \begin{gathered} \infty \\ 0 \\ \infty \\ \cdots \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ | $\left\|\begin{array}{c} -\hat{N} \\ \stackrel{\sim}{\mathrm{~N}} \end{array}\right\|$ | $\left.\begin{aligned} & \infty \\ & 0 \\ & \infty \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \end{aligned} \right\rvert\,$ | $\left\|\begin{array}{c} \infty \\ \underset{\sim}{c} \\ \underset{-}{2} \end{array}\right\|$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { n } \\ & \hat{\varepsilon} \\ & \text { लి } \end{aligned}$ | $\left\lvert\, \begin{gathered} \infty \\ \varepsilon \\ \underset{\sim}{n} \\ \underset{\sim}{2} \end{gathered}\right.$ | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{o} \\ & \underset{\sim}{\mathrm{~N}} \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\stackrel{\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{E}}{2}$ |  | $\begin{gathered} - \\ \underset{N}{2} \\ \underset{\sim}{n} \end{gathered}$ | $\left\lvert\, \begin{gathered} \infty \\ \underset{0}{2} \\ \underset{\sim}{n} \end{gathered}\right.$ | $\begin{aligned} & \infty \\ & \underset{\sim}{\mathcal{C}} \\ & \stackrel{1}{2} \end{aligned}$ |  | $\begin{aligned} & \mathscr{c} \\ & \underset{\sim}{0} \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{o} \\ & \underset{\sim}{\mathrm{~N}} \end{aligned}$ |
| $3$ | $\frac{\infty}{0}$ | $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{\hat{N}} \underset{\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{\mathrm{~N}}}{ }$ | $\left\|\begin{array}{l} \infty \\ \underset{O}{0} \\ 0 \\ \underset{\sim}{2} \end{array}\right\|$ |  | $\stackrel{\sim}{0}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \infty \\ & \varepsilon \\ & 0 \\ & m \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \propto \\ & \underset{\sim}{0} \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & \frac{0}{0} \\ & \frac{1}{\infty} \\ & \frac{1}{2} \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 으̃ } \\ & \frac{\mathbf{O}}{\boldsymbol{\sim}} \end{aligned}$ | $$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline \underline{U} \\ \underline{D} \\ \frac{1}{4} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ \mathscr{\Phi} \\ \hline \mathbf{Q} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 0 \\ & 3 \\ & 3 \\ & \vdots \\ & \hline 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \bar{\delta} \\ & \bar{\omega} \\ & \hline \mathbf{j} \end{aligned}$ |


| $\frac{5}{6}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \infty \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & \underset{i}{2} \end{aligned}$ | $\left\lvert\, \begin{gathered} \underset{\substack{\wedge}}{\underset{\sim}{c}} \\ \hline \end{gathered}\right.$ | $\begin{aligned} & \frac{\infty}{2} \\ & \frac{1}{0} \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | ¢ | ¢ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\frac{0}{E}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \infty \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & \underset{\sim}{\mathrm{~N}} \end{aligned}$ |  | $\begin{aligned} & \infty \\ & \stackrel{\infty}{2} \\ & 8 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | $\left\lvert\, \begin{aligned} & \infty \\ & \underset{\sim}{\mathrm{E}} \\ & \underset{\sim}{2} \end{aligned}\right.$ | ¢ |
| $\begin{aligned} & 3 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} \infty \\ 0 \\ \sim \\ \square \end{gathered}$ |  | $\begin{aligned} & \frac{\infty}{2} \\ & 8 \\ & \hline- \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ |  | ¢ |
|  |  | $$ | $\begin{aligned} & \mathbf{y} \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & \frac{1}{4} \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ \hline 1 \\ \hline \mathbf{x} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | O |
| م |  |  |  |  |  |




6 EXPAND



## DYNAMIC1 Algorithm

| Preset： 208 | Use this preset for： |
| :--- | :--- |
| Gain |  | | 1 MiX | MNLEV | OUTLEV | Balance： |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $100 \%$ | 0.0 dB | 0.0 dB | center | | 2 | LowCuf | Lo－Xovr | Hi－Xovr | Softclip |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 2.0 Hz | low－off | mid－off | on | | 3 | LevelS Mm． | low | mid | low |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 3.0 dB | 3.0 dB | 3.0 dB |  |
| Bnd－Lev | -8.0 dB | -8.0 dB | -8.0 dB |  |
| OdB ref | 5 dB | 5 dB | 5 dB |  | 4 | CoMPRES | low | low |  |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Threshold | 0.0 dB | 0.0 dB | 0.0 dB |
| Ratio | off | 0 ff | off |
| Gain | 0.0 dB | 0.0 dB | 0.0 dB |
| Attack | 30 ms | 20 ms | 20 ms |
| Release | 500 ms | 500 ms | 700 ms |
| FeedFwd | 10.0 ms | 10.0 ms | 10.0 ms |
| Crest | RMS | RMS | RMS |


| 5 | LIMITER | low | mid | high |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Threshold | 0.0 dB | 0.0 dB | 0.0 dB |
|  | Ratio | infin＞1 | infin＞1 | infin＞1 |
|  | Attack | 1.0 ms | 1.0 ms | 1.0 ms |
|  | Release | 1.4 s | 1．4s | 1.4 s |
|  | FeedFwd | 1.0 ms | 1.0 ms | 1.0 ms |

$$
\begin{array}{|l|c|c|c|}
\hline 6 & \text { EXPAND } & \text { low } & \text { mid } \\
\hline \text { Threshold } & -40 \mathrm{~dB} & -40 \mathrm{~dB} & -40 \mathrm{~dB} \\
\hline \text { Ratio } & 0 \mathrm{ff} & 0 \mathrm{ff} & 0 \mathrm{ff} \\
\hline \text { Attack } & 1.0 \mathrm{~ms} & 1.0 \mathrm{~ms} & 0.3 \mathrm{~ms} \\
\hline \text { Release } & 1.0 \mathrm{~s} & 1.0 \mathrm{~s} & 1.0 \mathrm{~s} \\
\hline \text { Range } & -30.0 \mathrm{~dB} & -30.0 \mathrm{~dB} & -30.0 \mathrm{~dB} \\
\hline
\end{array}
$$




| 3 | LEVELS | 10w | mid | hich |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Bnd－Lev |  |  |  |
|  | OdB ref |  |  |  |
|  | Meters |  |  |  |


| $\begin{aligned} & \frac{5}{0} \\ & \underline{E} \end{aligned}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{E}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $3$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | $\begin{array}{\|c} \frac{0}{0} \\ \hline \frac{1}{\omega} \\ \frac{1}{c} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 읓 } \\ & \frac{1}{\mathbf{O}} \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | $$ | $\begin{array}{\|l} \underline{y} \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ \frac{1}{4} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ \hline 0 \\ \hline \boldsymbol{Q} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l} \hline 0 \\ 3 \\ \mathbf{3} \\ \hline \mathbf{0} \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ \hline \end{array}$ | 㐫 |
| ＋ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |


| 5 | LIMITER | low | mid | high |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Threshold |  |  |  |
|  | Ratio |  |  |  |
|  | Attack |  |  |  |
|  | Release |  |  |  |
|  | FeedFwd |  |  |  |
| 6 | EXPAND | low | mid | high |
|  | Threshold |  |  |  |
|  | Ratio |  |  |  |
|  | Attack |  |  |  |
|  | Release |  |  |  |
|  | Range |  |  |  |



## 



| 2 | LowCut | Lo－Xovr | Hi－Xovr | SoffClip |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 8.0 Hz | 200 Hz | 2.00 KHz | on |

3 LEVELS

| 4 | COMPRES | low | mid | high |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Threshold | －14．0dB | －14．0dB | －18．0dB |
|  | Ratio | 1．80＞1 | $1.80>1$ | $2.0>1$ |
|  | Gain | 6.2 dB | 6.2 dB | 9.0 dB |
|  | Attack | 2.0 ms | 1.4 ms | 1.0 ms |
|  | Release | 1.0 s | 700 ms | 300ms |
|  | FeedFwd | 2.0 ms | 1.4 ms | 0.5 ms |
|  | Crest | 10 dB | 10 dB | 10 dB |

$\qquad$
6 ITXPAMD $\rightarrow$－



$\rightarrow \quad$ $L$
$\square$

| 1 | MX | INLEV | OUTLEV | Balance |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 100\％ | 0．0dB | 0．0dB | center |
| 2 | LowCut | Lo－XOVI | Hixovi | Softcilp |
|  | 2.0 Hz | low－off | mid－off | on |
| 3 | LEVELS | low | mid | high |
|  | Bnd－Lev | 4.0 dB | 4.0 dB | 4.0 dB |
|  | OdB ref | 0.0 dB | 0.0 dB | 0.0 dB |
|  | Meters | 10 dB | 10dB | 10dB |


| 4 | COMPRES | low | mid | hioh |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Threshold | 0.0 dB | 0．0dB | 0.0 dB |
|  | Ratio | off | off | off |
|  | Gain | 0.0 dB | 0．0dB | 0．0dB |
|  | Attack | 3.0 ms | 2.0 ms | 1.4 ms |
|  | Release | 1.0 s | 700ms | 300 ms |
|  | FeedFwd | 0.0 ms | 0.0 ms | 0.0 ms |
|  | Crest | 12 dB | 12dB | 12 dB |


| 5 | LIMIER | low | mid | high |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Threshold | 0．0dB | 0．0dB | 0.0 dB |
|  | Ratio | off | off | off |
|  | Attack | 100 $\mu \mathrm{s}$ | 100 $\mu \mathrm{s}$ | 50 ${ }^{\text {ms }}$ |
|  | Release | 300ms | 140ms | 70 ms |
|  | FeedFwd | 0.2 ms | 0.2 ms | 0.2 ms |

6 EXPAND



| Ratio |
| :--- |
| Attack |
| Rease |


| Atlack |
| :--- |
| Release |
| Range |

Range


| Preset： 211 | Use this preset for： |
| :---: | :--- |
| SoftLim |  |

0

## DYNAMIC1 Algorithm

## APPENDIX C

If problems or questions arise regarding your M5000, please check the following before you contact your dealer, TC Distributor or TC's head office in Denmark:

| HARDWARE CONFIGURATION: |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
| FRAME SERIAL NO: |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | NO: 1 | NO: 2 | NO: 3 | NO: 4 |  |
| ADA-I SERIAL NO: |  |  |  |  |  |
| DSP-2 SERIAL NO: |  |  |  |  |  |
| DSP-I SERIAL NO: |  |  |  |  |  |
| 5DISK SERIAL NO: |  | DISKTYPE:720 Kb/1.44Mb |  |  |  |
| ME MORY CARD TYPE: | SIZE: |  |  |  |  |


| SOFTWARE CONFIGURATION |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| BIOS VERSION: * |  |
| APPL.S OFT WARE: ** |  |


| M5000 CONNE CT IONS |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Analog IN: | YES | NO | Balanced | Unbalanced |
| Digital IN: | YES | NO | AES /EBU | SPDIF RCA/OPT . |
| Analog OUT : | YES | NO | Balanced | Unbalanced |
| Digtal OUT : | YES | NO | AES /EBU | SPDIF RCA/OPT . |
| WHAT KIND OF E QUIPME NT IS CONNE CT ED T OT HE M5000? |  |  |  |  |

DES CRIBE T HE PR OBLEM AND IN WHICH SIT UAT ION IT OCCURS:

* Refer to the 'SOFTWARE INSTALLATION'-module in the 'CONFIGURATION'-SECTION.
** Switch the M5000 OFF. During next 'power on', software version is shown in the display for a few seconds.


## SELF TEST PROCEDURE IN BIOS 1.07 or higher M5000

The BIOS 1.07 (or higher) has built-in diagnostic test features. Hopefully you will never need them but they are implemented in order that the user can check the machine before it is sent for repair. Each time the M5000 is powered on, a quick test is done. These tests consist of the following steps:

- All 4 LEDs on the CPU board are turned on.
- Check BIOS EPROM checksum, if the checksum is bad LD1 on the CPU-board will turn on, and if the front panel is working then the preset LED's will show 'E01'. The M5000 will then halt.
- Part of the dynamic RAM is tested, if the RAM is bad LD2 on the CPU-board will turn on, and if the front panel is working then the preset LED's will show 'E02'. The M5000 will then halt.
- Contact to the LCD display is tested, if no contact is established LD1 and LD2 on the CPUboard will turn on, and if the front panel is working then the preset LEDs will show 'E03'. The M5000 will then halt.
- LD4 on the CPU-board will stay on showing power is on.

If any problems occurs during operation of the M5000, e.g. disk problems or MIDI communication the user can select 2 different test sessions to be run.

## SESSION 1: Total CPU test.

This session will run the following tests:

1. DYN RAM
2. JEIDA MEMORY CARD SLOT
3. EEPROM TEST
4. EXTERNAL INTERRUPTS
5. MIDI PORTS
6. DISK DRIVE TEST
7. MODULE CARD DETECTION (cannot detect DSP cards with a "+")

A MIDI cable must be connected from MIDI output to MIDI input in order to check the MIDI ports.

In order to test the disk drive, a formatted 720 Kb or 1.44 Mb disk must be inserted. The data on the disk will be preserved.

Keep BYPASS and EDIT pressed while turning power on. After a while the display will show:

```
M5000 diagnostics
Please wait
```

Now release the keys.
The test will run by it self and if any errors are detected user will be prompted and asked to take action. It will be shown on the LCD display.
Before the JEIDA test, the user will be prompted :

```
JEIDA test will destroy all data on card
Press DO to continue, UNDO to skip.
```

Insert a JEIDA memory card in the slot in order to check the Memory card slot.
If DO is pressed the data on the JEIDA card will be lost, if UNDO is pressed, this test will be skipped and the next test will be done.
When all tests are done and no errors were detected, the display will show :

```
Tests OK
Press DO to continue (*)
```

If any errors were detected the display will show:

```
Errors detected
Press DO to continue (*)
```

Pressing DO will result in the following message:

```
Push any key to detect Cards..
Then push any key to continue..
```

The M5000 will look for installed cards, and show the type and address of the detected cards. If one ADDA and one DSP are installed the display will show:

ADDA at addr 1 DSP at addr 0

Pressing DO will enter the service card software mode. This is for future use. At this point all tests are done, and the M5000 should be powered down.

## SESSION 2: Front panel test.

Keep BYPASS and PROGRAM pressed while turning power on. After a while the display will show:

Press DO and verify that LCD is filled with black squares. (then press DO/SW7)

Pressing DO should give the following display:



Pressing DO now will continue the front test:

```
Verify BackLight & viewing angle knob.
cw=black, ccw=white (then press DO/SW7)
```

Make sure that the green backlight is on. Turn the small viewing angle knob clockwise and verify that the display turns black, then turn the knob counterclockwise and verify that the display turns clear (green).
Now turn the knob to the position that gives you the best contrast.
Pressing DO will continue the front test:

```
Turn A and verify all LEDs
0 Press DO/SW7 to continue
```

When turning knob A the LEDs on the front will turn on one at a time. Verify that all LED's on the front panel works, and that only one LED is on at a time.
Pressing DO will continue the front test:
Check if all LEDs are flashing
(except meters) press DO/SW7
All LEDs on the front panel should now flash except the meters, which will be on all the time.
Pressing DO will continue the front test:

```
Try all encoders 0..9 Then press DO/SW7
0}00000
```

Try to turn all knobs and verify that numbers from 0 to 9 can be selected.
Pressing DO will continue the front test:

```
Try all keys
NO KEY PRESSED
```

Press all keys - one at a time - and verify that the name of the key is shown in the display.
The front panel test is done. Turn power off.

```
APPENDIX C
M5TROUBL
Rev 1.5 Page 4
```

> t.c. electronic

| ERROR | DESCRIPTION | ACTION |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| EO1 | EPROM checksum error (IC 31 \& IC <br> 32). The BIOS EPROMs may be defect <br> or is badly connected in the socket. | Turn the M5000 off and on. If the error still is there, <br> fill in the check form on page 1 and contact your <br> dealer. |
| EO2 | Static RAM error (IC 22). The Static <br> RAM may be defect or has a bad <br> connection to the socket. | Turn the M5000 off and on. If the error still is there, <br> fill in the check form on page 1 and contact your <br> dealer. |
| E03 | Bad contact between Display - CPU- <br> board. | Turn the M5000 off and on. If the error still is there, <br> fill in the check form on page 1 and contact your <br> dealer. |
| E04 | Internal error trap. A heavy line <br> transient might cause these errors or <br> bad internal connections. | Make note on the ALGO/PROGRAM you are <br> running and the keys you pressed up to the error. <br> Try to power off and the reestablish the error. If this <br> is possible, please contact your dealer. |
| E05 | Stack overflow in CPU (IC 4). | Multitask overflow in CPU (IC 4). |

## APPENDIX D

## TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

All Specs is measured with ADA-1 STEREO ANALOG IN/OUT module installed.

| Max. Input Level | $\begin{aligned} & \text { @ - }-8 \mathrm{~dB} \text { gain, }+22,0 \mathrm{dBu} \\ & \text { @ } 0 \mathrm{~dB} \text { gain, }+14,8 \mathrm{dBu} \\ & \text { @ } 12 \mathrm{~dB} \text { gain, }+2,8 \mathrm{dBu} \end{aligned}$ |
| :---: | :---: |
| Input Impedance | 20 KOhm , electronically balanced, pin 2+, 3- |
| Input Gain | $\pm 12 \mathrm{~dB}$ |
| Input CMRR | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{DC}-1 \mathrm{KHz},>60 \mathrm{~dB} \\ & 1 \mathrm{KHz}-20 \mathrm{KHz},>40 \mathrm{~dB} \end{aligned}$ |
| Max. Output Level | $+22 \mathrm{dBu}$ |
| Output Signal Balance | >40 dB @ 1 KHz (BBC method) |
| Output Impedance | 100 Ohm, electronically balanced, floating type, pin 2+, 3- |
| Output Gain | -18 dB to +12 dB |
| Frequency Response | $10-22 \mathrm{KHz},+0-1 \mathrm{~dB}, \mathrm{Fs}=48.0 \mathrm{KHz}$ |
|  | $10-20 \mathrm{KHz},+0-1 \mathrm{~dB}, \mathrm{Fs}=44.1 \mathrm{KHz}$ |
|  | $10-15 \mathrm{KHz},+0-0.5 \mathrm{~dB}, \mathrm{Fs}=32.0 \mathrm{KHz}$ |
| Total Harmonic Dist. | $<0.03 \%, 1 \mathrm{KHz}, 0 \mathrm{dBu}$ |
| Inter modulation Dist. | $<0.03$ \% |
| Dynamic Range | $>98 \mathrm{~dB}$ |
| Crosstalk | $<-80 \mathrm{~dB}$ @ 1 KHz |
| Group Delay Linearity | $<5 \mu \mathrm{~S}$ |
| Phase Linearity | Better than $5^{\circ}$ |
| Digital Conversion | Input: Delta Sigma 64x oversampling, 18 bit res. Output: Linear 8x oversampling, 20 bit res. |
| Sampling Rate | $48.0 \mathrm{KHz}, 44.1 \mathrm{KHz}, 32.0 \mathrm{KHz}$ |
| Environment | Operating $0^{\circ}$ to $50^{\circ}$, storage $-20^{\circ}$ to $60^{\circ}$ |
| Power Requirements | 100-240 Vac, $50-60 \mathrm{~Hz}$ |

## Power Consumption

Finish

20-60 watts, depending on configuration
Black anodized aluminum face plate.
Black painted steel top and buttom plate.
Chromatic steel chassis.
Net Weight
8.6 kg (19 lbs)

Shipping Weight
10 kg (22 lbs)

Due to continuous development, TC Electronic reserves the right to change specifications without further notice.



## Power Switch

Device Selector
Edit Page
Dials A, B, C, D
Program Dial
Do, Undo

## Program

Edit
Utility
Bypass
Load LED
Timecode LED
MIDI In LED
Digital In LED
LAN/SCSI LED
Parameter Display
Algorithm/Program
Program Number
Input Level Meter

Rocker type
Selects the DSP to be controlled
Selects next or previous Edit Page
Four dials for parameter editing
Control Program- recall, view and store
Executes and cancels changes made
Selects Program Algorithm Mode
Selects Edit Parameter Mode
Selects utility display
Bypass of active devices
Lit when parameters are updating
Lit when receiving timecode
Lit when receiving MIDI
Lit when receiving at digital inputs
Lit when reading or writing data
80 character alphanumeric display
Displays algorithm type and program name
3 digit program number display
Dual 10 segment LED

## REAR PANEL CONNECTIONS

MIDI
Remote

Pedal
SMPTE

OPTION

In, Out and Thru
7-way custom RS-232 or RS485 In and Out, + power
Programmable switch type, not implemented
Input for cuelist management. The SMPTE jack plug must be an unbalanced connection with the TIP $=\mathbf{H O T}$ and the RING = GROUND. The SMPTE input accepts signals from -10 dBu and up
For future options such as PCMCIA or SCSI, a Local Area Network option 2.5 Mbit/Sec. high speed data exchange between M5000 and Macintosh, Optical drive, Hard drive or another M5000

AES/EBU In/Out<br>Optical In/Out<br>SPDIF In/Out

XLR Professional Format. Sample rates between 32.0 KHz and 48.0 KHz

Optical Consumer Digital Format. Sample rates between 32.0 KHz and 48.0 KHz
RCA Phono Consumer Digital Format. Sample rates between 32.0 KHz and 48.0 KHz

## ADA-1 CONNECTIONS

Left \& Right Input<br>Left \& Right Output

XLR 20 KOhm balanced. Max. input +22 dBu , pin $2+$, Pin 3 -.
XLR 100 Ohm balanced, floating type. Max. output +22 dBu , pin $2+$, Pin $3-$


To unbalance an input or output to the ADA-1 module, make that the the cable with the unbalancing pin $3 / 1$ connection is made at the mono plug end of the cable, as shown on the figure. Pin 1 is the shield.

## APPENDIX E

## CABLES FOR DIGITAL AUDIO

In order to get a clean and noiseless digital signal flow the cable in which the digital signal is running has a great influence - especially over longer distances. Here is a list of cables recommended for digital interfaces by the corresponding manufacturer.

| AES/EBU PROFESSIONAL DIGITAL AUDIO |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Manufacturer | Type |
| GOTHAM AG R'DORF, SWITZERLAND | GAC-2 (AES/EBU), 115ohm, +/-20\% |
| NEGLEX - MOGAMI | 3080 (AES/EBU), 110 ohm |
| GEPCO INT’L INC, CHICAGO | PN5524 - E131675 (ul), CM 24 AWG SHIELDED 75c |
| CANARE | 105 AES/EBU |
| BELDEN | 9860 (br. Sh.) 9271 (foil. Sh.), 124 ohm (Coaxial) |
| SPDIF CONSUMER DIGITAL AUDIO |  |
| Manufacturer |  |
| BELDEN | Type |
| TOSHIBA | 8217 OR 9259, 75OHM (Coaxial, RG-59/U-type) |
| SONY | TOCP174Y (OPTICAL) |

Use always high-quality, low capacitance cables with fixed impedance (Coaxial), $110 \Omega$ for AES/EBU and $75 \Omega$ for SPDIF. There is no guarantee that it will work properly if an ordinary microphone cable is used for AES/EBU-communication or ordinary RCA cables for typical HI-FI equipment.

## APPENDIX F

## TC BBS

The purpose of the TC Bulletin Board is to distribute new software, programs and presets for TC products and to share information between TC Electronic and the users of TC equipment. In order to use the TC BBS you need the following:

1. An IBM ${ }^{\text {tm }}$, Atari $^{\text {tm }}$ or MAC ${ }^{\text {tm }}$ computer.
2. A communication program such as Procomm, Crosstalk or one of several public domain programs.
3. A modem, (a modem is an interface for your computer that enables you to connect your computer to another computer through the telephone line).
In the communication program you have to set certain parameters: i.e. (for the bulletin board in Denmark) 300-14400 Baud, 8 Data bits, No parity and 1 Stop bit. You get the best result if you set your program to use the ANSI terminal emulator.
Depending on where you are in the world, you can call the following numbers:

| Bulletin Board | Number to call | Baud rate | Data bits | Parity | Stop bits |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| TC Denmark | +4586262899 | $300-14400$ | 8 | N | 1 |
| Germany $^{1}$ | +4940458090 | $300-19200$ | 8 | N | 1 |
| TC USA | $805-3749343$ | $300-14400$ | 8 | N | 1 |

## Important!

Once you are connected to the bulletin board, you will be asked what the serial number of your M5000 frame is - so you better have that ready before calling, in order not to waste expensive on-line time while looking for the serial number on the M5000 - notice that you need the serial number from the frame - not the number from the modules - it will begin with 28x xxx.
When you are on-line, you will be guided through the menus and messages on the screen will explain what to do, when you want to download (receive) a program, read a message or leave a message etc.

On the bulletin board you will find the latest software version for the M5000 together with different utilities such as programs for dumping software to the M5000 from a computer through MIDI, program-files, newest information from TC and much more.
Call the bulletin board NOW and see for yourself....

[^17]
## APPENDIX M

## BIOS AND FLASH MINIMUM REQUIREMENT

The following table shows a connection between the released software versions and the BIOS versions. Also the required Flash EPROM size is shown:

| SOFTWARE version | BIOS version | FLASH size |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1.04 | 1.04 | 1 Megabit |
| 1.06 | 1.04 | 1 Megabit |
| 1.07 | 1.04 | 1 Megabit |
| 1.09 | 1.04 | 1 Megabit |
| 1.11 | 1.04 | 1 Megabit |
| 1.12 | 1.04 | 1 Megabit |
| 1.13 | 1.04 | 1 Megabit |
| $1.14 \mathrm{~A}(\mathrm{ATAC})$ | 1.04 | 1 Megabit |
| 1.15 | 1.04 | 1 Megabit |
| next release | 2.00 | 2 Megabit |

Note: Some of the features in software version 1.14 and higher will not be supported in BIOS version 1.04. A list of such features are found in the following table:

| SOFTWARE version | FEATURES | Min. BIOS version | Min. FLASH size |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| x.xx | Self test proc. | 1.07 | 1 Megabit |
| 1.12 | SAMPLING option | 1.04 | 1 Megabit |
| 1.13 | MD2 | 1.04 | 1 Megabit |
| 1.14 | MD2 | 1.04 | 1 Megabit |
| 1.14 ATAC | ATAC support, | $1.04^{*}$ | 1 Megabit |
| 1.15 | SAMPLER (SIMM) <br> TOOLBOX** <br> SMPTE <br> PARAMETRIC EQ | 2.00 | 2 Megabit |

* Updating to BIOS 2.00 will improve ATAC performance
** Only if MD2 is installed
The software version is shown in the display during the power-on sequence of the M5000. The BIOS version and the Flash EPROM size are shown in the M5000 Setup Utility Menu. Refer to page 2 in the SOFTWARE INSTALLATION chapter in the CONFIGURATION section.

All M5000s with a higher serial number than 281000 are all updated with BIOS version higher than 2.0 and 2 Megabit FLASH EPROM size !

The M5000 has standard MIDI In/Out/Thru connectors located on the rear panel. This chapter describes MIDI operation of the M5000, which you will see is quite extensive.
MIDI operation of the M5000 allows you to do the following:

- Control algorithm-parameters using MIDI Controllers.
- Recall programs using MIDI Program Change.
- Re-map programs (useful e.g. for associating a program with a synthesizer preset).
- Communicate using MIDI System-Exclusives (for software-developers... see the end of this chapter).

If you wish to fully understand MIDI as such, there are a number of books on the subject available at music stores. However, you will not need a thorough understanding of MIDI to utilize the features discussed in this chapter.

## APPLICATIONS AND MIDI

As you know, multiple applications (DSP-cards) can be running at the same time. All applications share the same MIDI input/output, but it is vital to understand that each application has its own completely individual MIDI-setup. Each application has individual input/output channels and Program Maps. MIDI data received at MIDI In is actually fed into all applications, and MIDI output from all applications is merged and transmitted at MIDI Out.

Please note, that the System-Exclusive Device\# (which is used to identify the M5000 when it is being controlled from a Macintosh or PC-editor) is set for the entire M5000 frame. You can still access each individual DSP-card, but this is controlled from the editor.

## SETTING UP THE M5000 FOR MIDI OPERATION

Press the UTILITY button, and then turn the PROGRAM knob until the MIDI menu appears. Press the $<$ Page button as many times as possible. You will now see the following (actual values may be different, but that is quite OK ):

## MIDI INPUT Page:

```
INPUT CTL.IN PRG.IN PRG.BANK MENU
ch1 on on ROM MIDI
```

The INPUT knob selects on which channel the M5000 is to receive MIDI data. If the knob is turned fully counter-clockwise, 'omni-mode' is selected. In this case, the M5000 receives MIDI data on all channels.

When CTL.IN (Controller Input) is enabled, the M5000 will respond to MIDI Controller messages. Controllers are used for changing algorithm-parameters (more on this below in 'MIDI Controllers').


When PRG.IN (Program Input) is enabled, the M5000 will respond to MIDI Program Change commands. If the PRG.MAP (Program Map as described below) is enabled, any received Program Change is modified to select a different program as specified in the Program Map.


PRG.BANK selects which bank presets are recalled from with the Program Change command.

## MIDI OUTPUT Page:

## OUTPUT PRG.OUT OFFST-O OFFST-I MENU

 ch 1 off $-1 \quad 1 \quad$ MIDI




OFFST-I (Input-offset).

OFFST-O and OFFST-I (output and input offsets) are provided, because different manufacturers implement program changes differently. It is a typical problem that your sequencer may number programs from 1 to 128, while your effect-processor may number programs from 0 to 127 . The fix for this is the offset. The input-offset is added to the number of the program you wish to recall. With the settings shown above, program $\# 5$ is recalled when you ask for program $\# 5$ on your sequencer, which is the most natural way. Without the offset, program \#4 would be recalled when you ask for program \#5.
The output-offset works in the opposite way, because the program-change is going in the opposite direction.
You can also use the offsets to access a completely different range of programs. With an input-offset of 101, you can recall presets 101 and upwards by asking for presets 1 and upwards (which MIDI normally would make impossible).

```
MIDI & SMPTE
M5MIDIIN
Rev 1.4 Page 2
```


## PROGRAM CHANGES

When Program Input is enabled (see above), the M5000 will respond to Program Changes received via MIDI.

If the Program Map is disabled, the M5000 will respond normally to Program Changes (with regard to the offset, of course). Otherwise, the Program Map must be defined on the following page:

## Program Map Page:

```
PRG.IN MAPS TO PRESET PRG.MAP MENU
1 no chg. off MIDI
```



The PRG.IN knob decides which preset you would like to remap.


The MAPS TO PRESET selects which preset will be recalled when the PRG.IN preset is recalled. If 'no chg.' is selected, nothing will happen when the PRG.IN preset is recalled.


PRG.MAP enables/disables the program map.

The Program Map can be cleared on the following page:

## MIDI Utility-Page:

SELECT FUNCTION PRESS DO MENU
CLEAR PRG. MAP MIDI


Turn this knob to select one of the following functions:
CLEAR PRG.MAP
LOAD SETUP FROM CARD
SAVE SETUP TO CARD
LOAD SETUP FROM DISK
SAVE SETUP TO DISK
Press DO to engage the function.

## MIDI CONTROLLERS

The M5000 allows you to control any parameter of any algorithm with a fixed set of controllers.

A MIDI controller is essentially a knob (such as a modulation wheel) which goes smoothly from 0 (min.) to 127 (max.). Real-time MIDI control allows you to control a given parameter (e.g. REVERB MIX, OUTPUT LEVEL, REVERB DECAY etc.) with a controller. In the following, each parameter of each algorithm is listed with the associated controller\#.

Since MIDI controllers always go from 0 to 127, they are scaled to fit with the associated parameter. 0 represents the lowest possible value of the parameter, while 127 represents the highest possible value of the parameter. Setting REVERB MIX to 0 thus results in $0 \%$, while 127 results in $100 \%$.

## REVERB-1 \& REVERB-2:

| Parameter | Controller\# | Parameter | Controller\# |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| MIX | 10 | HICUT | 21 |
| INLEV | 11 | ATT | 22 |
| OUTLEV | 12 | LO-XOVR | 23 |
| DECAY | 13 | HI-XOVR | 24 |
| x LOW | 14 | INITLEV | 25 |
| x HIGH | 15 | REVLEV | 26 |
| DIFFUSE | 16 | I-XFEED | 27 |
| SHAPE | 17 | REVDIFF • | 28 |
| x SIZE | 18 | BUILDUP • | 29 |
| PREDLY | 19 | IATTACK • | 30 |
| REVFEED | 20 | IDECAY • | 31 |

Parameters marked with • are only available in REVERB-2.

## REVERB-3:

| Parameter | Controller\# | Parameter | Controller\# |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| MIX | 10 | LM-XOVR | 19 |
| INLEV | 11 | HI-XOVR | 20 |
| OUTLEV | 12 | PREDLY | 21 |
| DECAY | 13 | DISTANS | 22 |
| x LOW | 14 | HICUT | 23 |
| x LOMID | 15 | ATT | 24 |
| x HIGH | 16 | MODRATE | 25 |
| DIFFUSE | 17 | MODDPTH | 26 |
| LO-XOVR | 18 | DIFTYPE | 27 |

## NONLIN-1:

| Parameter | Controller\# | Parameter | Controller\# |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| MIX | 10 | LOCUT | 17 |
| INLEV | 11 | HICUT | 18 |
| OUTLEV | 12 | DIFFUSE | 19 |
| PREDLY | 13 | PREDIFF | 20 |
| ATTACK | 14 | DIFTYPE | 21 |
| HOLD | 15 | WIDTH | 22 |
| RELEASE | 16 |  |  |

## CHORUS-1:

| Parameter | Controller\# | Parameter | Controller\# |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| MIX | 10 | SPEED | 16 |
| INLEV | 11 | DEPTH | 17 |
| OUTLEV | 12 | FBLOCUT | 18 |
| PHASE | 13 | FBHICUT | 19 |
| DELAY | 14 | HICUT | 20 |
| FB | 15 | ATT | 21 |

## DELAY-1:

| Parameter | Controller\# | Parameter | Controller\# |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| MIX | 10 | FB | 15 |
| INLEV | 11 | FBLOCUT | 16 |
| OUTLEV | 12 | FBHICUT | 17 |
| LDELAY | 13 | HICUT | 18 |
| RDELAY | 14 | ATT | 19 |

## DELAY-2:

| Parameter | Controller\# | Parameter | Controller\# |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| MIX | 10 | DEPTH | 22 |
| INLEV | 11 | PHASE | 23 |
| OUTLEV | 12 | INV-PAN | 24 |
| DELAY1 | 13 | FB1 | 25 |
| DELAY2 | 14 | FB2 | 26 |
| HICUT | 15 | XFB12 | 27 |
| ATT | 16 | XFB21 | 28 |
| LEVEL1 | 17 | LOFB | 29 |
| PAN1 | 18 | HIFB | 30 |
| LEVEL2 | 19 | LOXOVR | 31 |
| PAN2 | 20 | HIXOVR | 32 |
| SPEED | 21 |  |  |

## REVPITCH:

| Parameter | Controller\# | Parameter | Controller\# |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| MIX | 10 | HICUT2 | 23 |
| INLEV | 11 | ATT2 | 24 |
| OUTLEV | 12 | FB1 | 25 |
| PITCH1 | 13 | FB2 | 26 |
| FINE1 | 14 | XFB12 | 27 |
| PITCH2 | 15 | XFB21 | 28 |
| FINE2 | 16 | AMBMIX | 29 |
| LEVEL1 | 17 | PREDLY | 30 |
| PAN1 | 18 | SHAPE | 31 |
| LEVEL2 | 19 | SIZE | 32 |
| PAN2 | 20 | PITCDLY | 33 |
| HICUT1 | 21 | PITCCFT | 34 |
| ATT1 | 22 |  |  |

MIDI \& SMPTE
M5MIDIIN
Rev 1.4 Page 6

## PITCH-1:

| Parameter | Controller\# | Parameter | Controller\# |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| MIX | 10 | HICUT2 | 23 |
| INLEV | 11 | ATT2 | 24 |
| OUTLEV | 12 | FB1 | 25 |
| PITCH1 | 13 | FB2 | 26 |
| FINE1 | 14 | XFB12 | 27 |
| PITCH2 | 15 | XFB21 | 28 |
| FINE2 | 16 | DELAY1 | 29 |
| LEVEL1 | 17 | DELAY2 | 30 |
| PAN1 | 18 | DGSPEED | 31 |
| LEVEL2 | 19 | POLYSPD | 32 |
| PAN2 | 20 | POLYDLY | 33 |
| HICUT1 | 21 | DGFILT | 34 |
| ATT1 | 22 |  |  |

## PITCH-2:

| Parameter | Controller\# | Parameter | Controller\# |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| MIX | 10 | HICUT | 17 |
| INLEV | 11 | ATT | 18 |
| OUTLEV | 12 | DGSPEED | 19 |
| PITCH | 13 | POLYSPD | 20 |
| FINE | 14 | POLYDLY | 21 |
| FB | 15 | DGFILT | 22 |
| DELAY | 16 |  |  |

## AMBIENCE:

| Parameter | Controller\# | Parameter | Controller\# |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| MIX | 10 | LOCUT | 17 |
| INLEV | 11 | LOATT | 18 |
| OUTLEV | 12 | HICUT | 19 |
| SHAPE | 13 | HIATT | 20 |
| SIZE | 14 | SPEED | 21 |
| PREDLY | 15 | DEPTH | 22 |
| WIDTH | 16 | PDLYMUL | 23 |

## TAPFAC-1:

| Parameter | Controller\# | Parameter | Controller\# |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| MIX | 10 | LEVEL9 | 44 |
| INLEV | 11 | LEVEL10 | 45 |
| OUTLEV | 12 | LEVEL11 | 46 |
| SCALE | 13 | LEVEL12 | 47 |
| PREDLY | 14 | LEVEL13 | 48 |
| WIDTH | 15 | LEVEL14 | 49 |
| LASTTAP | 16 | LEVEL15 | 50 |
| CURTAP | 17 | LEVEL16 | 51 |
| DELAY1 | 18 | LEVEL17 | 52 |
| DELAY2 | 19 | LEVEL18 | 53 |
| DELAY3 | 20 | PAN1 | 54 |
| DELAY4 | 21 | PAN2 | 55 |
| DELAY5 | 22 | PAN3 | 56 |
| DELAY6 | 23 | PAN4 | 57 |
| DELAY7 | 24 | PAN5 | 58 |
| DELAY8 | 25 | PAN6 | 59 |
| DELAY9 | 26 | PAN7 | 59 |
| DELAY10 | 27 | PAN8 | 76 |
| DELAY11 | 28 | 39 | PAN9 |

MIDI \& SMPTE
M5MIDIIN
Rev 1.4 Page 8

## DYNAMIC1:

| Parameter | Controller\# | Parameter | Controller\# |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| MIX | 10 | M-LIMREL | 45 |
| INLEV | 11 | M-EXPTHR | 46 |
| OUTLEV | 12 | M-EXPRATIO | 47 |
| BALANCE | 13 | M-EXPATCK | 48 |
| LOWCUT | 14 | M-EXPREL | 49 |
| LMXOVR | 15 | M-EXPRANGE | 50 |
| MHXOVR | 16 | M-LEVEL | 51 |
| SOFTCLIP | 17 | M-CREST | 52 |
| L-COMTHR | 18 | M-DELAY | 53 |
| L-COMRATIO | 19 | M-LIMDLY | 54 |
| L-COMATCK | 20 | M-SFTKNEE | 55 |
| L-COMREL | 21 | M-METERS | 56 |
| L-LIMTHR | 22 | M-REF0DB | 57 |
| L-LIMRATIO | 23 | H-COMTHR | 58 |
| L-LIMATCK | 24 | H-COMRATIO | 59 |
| L-LIMREL | 25 | H-COMATCK | 60 |
| L-EXPTHR | 26 | H-COMREL | 61 |
| L-EXPRATIO | 27 | H-LIMTHR | 62 |
| L-EXPATCK | 28 | H-LIMRATIO | 63 |
| L-EXPREL | 29 | H-LIMATCK | 64 |
| L-EXPRANGE | 30 | H-LIMREL | 65 |
| L-LEVEL | 31 | H-EXPTHR | 66 |
| L-CREST | 32 | H-EXPRATIO | 67 |
| L-DELAY | 33 | H-EXPATCK | 68 |
| L-LIMDLY | 34 | H-EXPREL | 69 |
| L-SFTKNEE | 35 | H-EXPRANGE | 70 |
| L-METERS | 36 | H-LEVEL | 71 |
| L-REF0DB | 37 | H-CREST | 72 |
| M-COMTHR | 38 | H-DELAY | 73 |
| M-COMRATIO | 39 | H-LIMDLY | 74 |
| M-COMATCK | 40 | H-SFTKNEE | 75 |
| M-COMREL | 41 | H-METERS | 76 |
| M-LIMTHR | 42 | H-REF0DB | 77 |
| M-LIMRATIO | 43 | PARLNK | 78 |
| M-LIMATCK | 44 | NOMDELAY | 79 |

## TOOLBOX:

| Parameter | Controller\# | Parameter | Controller\# |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| MIX | 10 | EQTYPE2 | 40 |
| INLEV | 11 | EQFREQ2 | 41 |
| OUTLEV | 12 | PWIDTH2 | 42 |
| INSON | 13 | NWIDTH2 | 43 |
| BAL | 14 | PGAIN2 | 44 |
| MONO | 15 | NGAIN2 | 45 |
| LRSWAP | 16 | EQON2 | 46 |
| ID_PHASE | 17 | EQTYPE3 | 47 |
| DITHER | 18 | EQFREQ3 | 48 |
| DITTYP | 19 | PWIDTH3 | 49 |
| MSON | 20 | NWIDTH3 | 50 |
| MSANGLE | 21 | PGAIN3 | 51 |
| FADECURVE | 22 | NGAIN3 | 52 |
| FADER | 23 | EQON3 | 53 |
| METER | 24 | EQTYPE4 | 54 |
| RANGE | 25 | EQFREQ4 | 55 |
| TICKS | 26 | PWIDTH4 | 56 |
| HOLD | 27 | NWIDTH4 | 57 |
| LDELAY | 28 | SSLOPE4 | 58 |
| RDELAY | 29 | CSLOPE4 | 59 |
| EQTYPE1 | 30 | PGAIN4 | 60 |
| EQFREQ1 | 31 | NGAIN4 | 61 |
| PWIDTH1 | 32 | SGAIN4 | 62 |
| NWIDTH1 | 33 | EQON4 | 63 |
| SSLOPE1 | 34 | LPPM | 64 |
| CSLOPE1 | 35 | RPPM | 65 |
| PGAIN1 | 36 | CORR | 66 |
| NGAIN1 | 37 | CORLEG | 67 |
| SGAIN1 | 38 | FADVAL | 68 |
| EQON1 | 39 |  |  |

## SYSTEM-EXCLUSIVES

System-Exclusives (Sysex for short) is a subset of the MIDI-protocol, which allows softwaredevelopers (who are writing a Mac or PC-based editor) to communicate with the M5000 in a very technical manner (giving total control over the M5000). The Sysex-documentation is of a very technical nature, which is why it isn't described in this manual. The M5000 SystemExclusive Manual is available at any TC-office.

MIDI \& SMPTE
M5MIDIIN
Rev 1.4 Page 10

## MIDI System-Exclusive Page:

| SYSEX ID\# |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| 0 | MIDI |



Turn the Device\# knob to set the device-number of this M5000.

The Device\# is all you'll ever need to know about Sysex. This number must be set to same value both on your Macintosh/PC-editor and on your M5000 in order for them to be able to 'find' each other.

## GUIDED TOURS

The following are step by step methods of familiarizing yourself with the various features of the M5000. They are intended to provide the user with sufficient working knowledge of all aspects of the unit in a condensed form. For a more in-depth explanation of the various parameters, please consult the appropriate chapters in the manual referred to in brackets (SECTIONNAME, MODULENAME).

- \#1: SOFTWARE UPDATE
\# \#2: PROGRAM HANDLING
- \#3: DISK/CARD HANDLING


## \#1: SOFTWARE UPDATE

How do I update with a new software ? (Configuration, software installation)

1. Make sure that the M5000 is switched off.
2. Switch on power while holding the BYPASS button until the following appears:

M5000 SETUP UTILITY
choose option and press Do: Load (DISK)
3. Insert floppy disk into the disc drive or memory card in the memory card slot with new software.
4. Press DO until "Select file to load :" appears.
5. Turn the PROGRAM knob to select the software you want to load and press DO twice.
6. Wait while FLASH EPROM is updating.
7. Power-down and then power-up to initialize the new software as instructed in the display.

## \#2: PROGRAM HANDLING

How do I call up a program: (general instruction, program handling)

1. Press the Program button.
2. Turn knob A and choose the Memory Bank SOURCE where the program is stored, e.g. ROM , RAM or FILE.
3. Turn the PROGRAM knob to choose a program. (The PROGRAM NUMBER will blink).
4. Press DO. The program is now loaded and the PROGRAM NUMBER stops blinking.

How do I edit and store a program? (general instruction, program handling)

1. Press the EDIT button whilst in the program you want to edit.
2. By turning the knobs $\mathbf{A}$ to $\mathbf{D}$ and pressing the PAGE buttons left or right, all parameters can be accessed and changed as required. A red LED will appear in the PROGRAM NUMBER display next to the word "EDITED" to inform you that parameters in this program have been changed.
3. Press the Program button.
4. Turn knob A until $\gg \boldsymbol{R a m} \ll$ appears.
5. Turn knob D until $\gg$ Store $\ll$ appears and choose a new user preset number (RAM) for the program by turning the PROGRAM knob.
6. Press DO to store the new program in RAM.

## \#3: DISK/CARD HANDLING

## How do I format a Floppy Disk/Memory Card ?

During a session: (GENERAL INSTRUCTION, UTILITY HANDLING)

1. Insert floppy disk in the disc drive or memory card in the memory card slot.
2. Press the UTILITY button and turn the PROGRAM knob until the MENU $\gg$ FILE $\ll$ appears.
3. Choose which medium you wish to format by turning knob A until $\gg$ FORMAT DISK $\ll$ (floppy disc) or $\gg$ FORMAT CARD $\ll$ (PCMCIA-card) appears and press DO.
4. Turn knob A to select 720 Kb or 1.44 Mb formatting for disk size or $64-1024 \mathrm{~Kb}$ formatting for card size.
5. Press DO twice.

## How do I save my programs to disk/card? (general instruction, program handuing)

RAM programs:

1. Press the PROGRAM button.
2. Press the right PAGE button twice.
3. Turn knob A until $\gg$ Ram to File $\ll$ appears and then press DO.
4. Press DO when the file menu reads $\gg$ Save Disk $\ll$.
5. Now give a name to the 'bank' of programs, which are in the FILE buffer.
6. Press DO to store the FILE buffer to disk.

FILE programs: Repeat 1-6, except 3.
How do I load programs into the M5000 ? (general instruction, program handling)

## Loading From a floppy disk:

1. Press the Program button.
2. Press the right PAGE button twice.
3. Turn knob A until $\gg$ Load Disk $\ll$ appears and then press DO.
4. Select the file to load by turning the PROGRAM knob and then press DO.

## Loading From a Memory Card:

1. Press the Program button.
2. Press the right PAGE button twice.
3. Turn knob A until "Load Card" appears and then press DO.
4. Select the file to load by turning the PROGRAM knob and pressing DO.


DIGITALAUDIOMAINFRAME

## MIDI System-Exclusive Documentation

Revision 2.00
(16/06/97)

# Documents all features in application-software APL115.M5K 

${ }^{\circ} 1995$ TC Electronic

1 INTRODUCTION ..... 1
1.1 Overview .....
1.1.1 The Parameter-Access Dump .....  .1
1.1.2 System-Configuration/Info Dumps .....
1.1.3 Preset-Handling Dumps .....  1
1.2 General Format .....  1
2 INDIVIDUAL PARAMETER-ACCESS ..... 3
2.1 Overview ..... 3
2.2 Parameter-IDs and Values .....  3
2.2.1 Parameter-IDs ..... 3
2.2.2 Parameter-values ..... 3
2.3 Requesting Parameter Values ..... 3
2.4 Setting Parameter Values ..... 4
2.4.1 Truncation and Mutual Dependencies ..... 4
2.4.2 Linked Parameters .....
2.4.3 The Parameter-Queue ..... 4
2.5 Spontaneous Data-Emissions ..... 5
2.6 Conversion Routines ..... 5
2.6.1 convertMIDItoPar ..... 5
2.6.2 convertPartoMIDI ..... 5
2.6.3 convertMIDItoValue ..... 5
2.6.4 convertValuetoMIDI ..... 6
3 ALGORITHM-PARAMETERS ..... 7
3.1 REVERB-1 \& REVERB-2. ..... 7
3.2 REVERB-3 ..... 7
3.3 NONLIN-1 ..... 8
3.4 CHORUS-1 .....  8
3.5 DELAY-1 .....  .8
3.6 DELAY-2 ..... 9
3.7 REVPITCH ..... 9
3.8 PITCH-1 ..... 10
3.9 PITCH-2 ..... 11
3.10 TAPFAC-1 ..... 11
3.11 AMBIENCE ..... 12
3.12 DYNAMIC1 ..... 13
3.12.1 Meters ..... 14
3.12.2 Meter Code-Example ..... 15
3.12.3 Mutual Dependencies ..... 16
3.13 TOOLBOX ..... 16
3.13.1 Special Considerations ..... 18
4 SYSTEM-PARAMETERS ..... 19
4.1 Overview ..... 19
4.2 System-Parameters ..... 19
4.3 VU-Meters ..... 19
4.3.1 Communication ..... 19
4.3.2 Calculations ..... 20
4.4 Hardware-Specific Parameter Ranges ..... 20
5 PRESET-HANDLING ..... 21
5.1 Overview ..... 21
5.2 Conversions And IDs ..... 21
5.2.1 Preset-numbers ..... 21
5.2.2 Algorithm-IDs ..... 21
5.2.3 Preset-Names .....  21
5.3 Preset Information ..... 22
5.4 Recall Preset ..... 22
5.5 Request Preset ..... 22
5.6 Preset-Dump ..... 23
6 C PROGRAMMING-INTERFACE ..... 23
6.1 Overview ..... 23
6.2 Using The Interface ..... 23

## 1 Introduction

### 1.1 Overview

The M5000 sends and receives system-exclusive messages (sysex). The sysex-protocol gives you access to the following:

- Each individual parameter in each algorithm
- System-parameters (audio-routing, formats, sample-rates, meters etc.)
- System-information (software version, installed options)
- Preset-handling (preset-transfers)
- Preset-selection (to recall presets without needing to know about MIDI-channels)


### 1.1.1 The Parameter-Access Dump

The Parameters-Access dump is used for almost all communication to and from the M5000, and is therefore the most extensive part of the protocol. Parameters that are specific to individual algorithms are described in chapter 5. Parameters that are general to the system (DSP-cards) are described in chapter 5.

There are many different parameter-types in the M5000, including milliseconds, hertz, decibels, tables and character-strings. It would be nearly impossible to describe and list each parameter-type in detail, which is why TC supplies a C programming-interface to assist you in displaying the correct value for each individual parameter-type (eg. " 10 kHz " or " $50 \%$ "). The programming-interface consists of two files, "CLASS.C" and "CLASS.H". The two files can be downloaded from the TC User-Club BBS on the following phone-numbers:
$\begin{array}{ll}\text { Denmark: } & +45-86217599 \\ \text { USA: } & +1-8053731828\end{array}$
Please refer to chapter 0 for information on how to use the interface.

### 1.1.2 System-Configuration/Info Dumps

Information about the system (software version/installed options/DSP-cards etc.) can be requested from the M5000. This is described in chapter 0 .

### 1.1.3 Preset-Handling Dumps

These dumps provide you the means to store, recall, dump and retrieve presets as well as request information about them. This is described in chapter 0 .

### 1.2 General Format

Sysex-packets are transferred to and from the M5000 using the following general format:

```
Sysex-start $f0
TC ID $33
Device# $00-$7f
Card# $01-$04
Packet-type $00-$07
Data specific to the Packet-type
Sysex-end $f7
```

The Device\# must correspond with the Device\# set for the M5000 frame.
The Card\# refers to the ID of each consecutive DSP-card or layer. A value of 1 refers to the first DSP-card and a value of 2 refers to the second DSP-card. A value of 0 is only used in certain operations that refer to the entire M5000 frame.

The Packet-type signifies the type of packet. Each individual request and dump has it's own unique packet-type. The following packet-types are transmitted and/or recognized by the M5000:

| $\$ 00$ | Set parameter(s) |
| :--- | :--- |
| $\$ 01$ | Request parameter(s) |
| $\$ 02$ | Recall Preset |
| $\$ 03$ | Request Preset Info |
| $\$ 04$ | Request System Configuration Info |
| $\$ 05$ | Preset Info |

The M5000 is very tolerant about incomplete or erroneous sysex-packets, but it is still recommended that you keep your packets clean with all values within range. The M5000 allows packet-sizes of any size (which is relevant for requesting a large number of parameters), though you need to obey the precautions regarding the parameter-queue as described in the next chapter.

## 2 Individual Parameter-Access

### 2.1 Overview

Each individual parameter in the M5000 has a unique ID. This gives you access to each parameter in each algorithm and general system-parameters, such as Input-gain or Bypass, for instance.

Not all parameters exist at the same time. For example, parameters in the REVERB-3 algorithm don't exist if a PITCH-1 algorithm is running on the DSP-card in question. Trying to set nonexistent parameters will have no effect, and requesting their setting will produce no result.

Note: It is possible to obtain information about the algorithm currently running, to determine which parameters should be polled. Please refer to Chapter 0 for a description of how to obtain information about the algorithm currently running on a DSP-card.

### 2.2 Parameter-IDs and Values

All parameter-IDs and values in the M5000 are 14 bit wide. In addition, parameter-values are signed, to allow for negative values. The two ranges are as follows:

Parameter-IDs: $\quad 0$ to 16383 (\$0000 to \$3fff)
Parameter-values: -8192 to 8191 (-\$2000 to \$1fff)

### 2.2.1 Parameter-IDs

In the following documentation, the 14-bit parameter-IDs are shown as <Par\# xxxx>, although their physical placement in the sysex-packet is as follows:

```
Par #xx_ bit 8-13 (MSB First)
Par #__xx bit 0-7 (LSB Last)
```

...is shown as:
<Par \#xxxx>

In sections 0 and 0 you'll find two C-routines that convert the two MIDI-bytes to a single C-type unsigned short and vice versa.

### 2.2.2 Parameter-values

In the following documentation, the 14 -bit signed parameter-values are shown as <Value \#xxxx>, although their physical placement in the sysex-packet is as follows:

```
Value #xx_ bit 8-13 (MSB First, sign in bit 13)
Value #__xx bit 0-7 (LSB Last)
```

...is shown as:
<Value \#xxxx>

In order to convert these double MIDI-bytes to a single C-type short, the sign bit must be extended from bit 13 to bit 15 . In sections 0 and 0 you'll find two C-routines that convert the two MIDI-bytes to a single C-type short and vice versa.

### 2.3 Requesting Parameter Values

The following sysex-packet allows you to request the setting of a number of parameters. In a single packet, you can request as many or as few parameters as you like.

```
Sysex-start $f0
TC ID $33
Device# xx
Card# xx
Packet-type $01 - Request
<Par #xxxx>
<Par #yyyy>
<Par #zzzz>
...
...
Sysex-end $f7
```

The M5000 replies with a Parameter Dump, as described next:

### 2.4 Setting Parameter Values

In a single parameter-dump, you can set as many or as few parameters as you like. In order to minimize MIDI-traffic, you should set as many parameters as possible in a single dump.

```
Sysex-start $f0
TC ID $3
Device# xx
Card# xx
Packet-type $00 - Dump
<Par #xxxx>
<Par Value>
<Par #yyyy>
<Par Value>
<Par #zzzz>
<Par Value>
...
...
Sysex-end
$f7
```


### 2.4.1 Truncation and Mutual Dependencies

If a parameter-value is out of range, it is truncated to fit. Please note, that some parameters (such as cross-overs) have floating minimum and maximum values. This scheme follows a fairly simple logic, although you must implement this yourself in order to track the correct value for the user; the M5000 has no way of telling you that a parameter-value has been truncated. These mutual dependencies are described as necessary in conjunction with the parameter-listings in chapter 0 and 0 .

### 2.4.2 Linked Parameters

Some parameters are linked to always contain the same value (a good example of this is the 0dBRef parameter in the DYNAMIC1 algorithm). Generally, you shouldn't display or manipulate more than one of the linked parameters. With the 0dBRef example, simply choose one of the parameters as the only one.

### 2.4.3 The Parameter-Queue

The M5000 places all parameters that need to be changed in a queue. Some parameters take a little time to recalculate, while others change instantaneously. The parameters are extracted from the queue as fast as possible.

Note: If you set a parameter that hasn't yet been extracted from the queue, the queue-entry for the given parameter is updated to hold the new value. This means that you don't need to worry about placing delays in the MIDI data-stream while the user is dragging a slider in a patch-editor. Simply transmit the new value for the given parameter every time the slider is moved.

The parameter-queue in the M5000 holds 32 messages. If you are setting up an algorithm like TAPFAC-1 or DYNAMIC1 (which have more than 32 parameters), you must place slight delays in the MIDI data-stream. Some special parameters take some time to recalculate (you will know these parameters from the M5000 front panel). Instead of having a specific delay for each parameter-type, you should simply transmit the parameters at a pace that works.

### 2.5 Spontaneous Data-Emissions

The M5000 will generally never output parameter-packets spontaneously. However Recall Preset packet will be transmitted if the user recalls a preset via the front-panel or an ATAC.

Meters are never transmitted spontaneously, but must be polled.

### 2.6 Conversion Routines

### 2.6.1 convertMIDItoPar

The following routine combines the two MIDI-bytes that identify the parameter-ID and return a single unsigned short:

```
unsigned short convertMIDItoPar(char byte1, char byte2)
{
    return byte2+(byte1 << 7);
}
```


### 2.6.2 convertPartoMIDI

The following routine derives the two MIDI-bytes that identify the parameter-ID from a single short:

```
void convertMIDItoPar(unsigned short parNo, char *byte1,
    char *byte2)
{
    *bytel=parNo >> 7;
    *byte2=parNo & 0x7f;
}
```


### 2.6.3 convertMIDItoValue

The following routine combines the two MIDI-bytes that identify the parameter-value and return a single short:

```
short convertMIDItoValue(char byte1, char byte2)
{
    short value;
    value=(byte2 & 0x7f) + ( (short) (byte1 & 0x7f) << 7);
    if (value & 0x2000) i |= 0xc000; // Extend sign bit
    return value;
}
```


### 2.6.4 convertValuetoMIDI

The following routine derives the two MIDI-bytes that identify the parameter-ID from a single short:

```
void convertValuetoMIDI(short value, char *byte1, char *byte2)
{
    *byte1=(value >> 7) & 0x7f;
    *byte2=value & 0x7f;
}
```


## 3 Algorithm-Parameters

### 3.1 REVERB-1 \& REVERB-2

| Parameter-name | ID (Hex) | Min (Dec) | Max (Dec) | Class (Type) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| MIX | 1000 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| INLEV | 1001 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| OUTLEV | 1002 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| DECAY | 1003 | 3 | 600 | CLS_SEC1 |
| x LOW | 1004 | 1 | 250 | CLS_NON2 |
| x HIGH | 1005 | 1 | 200 | CLS_NON2 |
| DIFFUSE | 1006 | 1 | 25 | CLS_NON0 |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| SHAPE | 1007 | 0 | 5 | CLS_SHAPE0 |
| x SIZE | 1008 | 0 | 20 | CLS_SIZE0 |
| PREDLY | 1009 | 0 | 2000 | CLS_MS1 |
| REVFEED | 100 A | 0 | 1000 | CLS_MS1 |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| HICUT | $100 B$ | 14 | 30 | CLS_FRQ0 |
| ATT | 100 C | 20 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| LO-XOVR | 100 D | 0 | 30 | CLS_FRQ0 |
| HI-XOVR | 100 E | 0 | 30 | CLS_FRQ0 |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| INITLEV | 100F | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| REVLEV | 1010 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| RWIDTH | 1011 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| I-XFEED | 1012 | 0 | 1 | CLS_OFFON |

These last 4 parameters are only available in REVERB-2:

| REVDIFF | 1013 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| BUILDUP | 1014 | 0 | 100 | CLS_NON0 |
| IATTACK | 1015 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| IDECAY | 1016 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |

### 3.2 REVERB-3

| Parameter-name | ID (Hex) | Min (Dec) | Max (Dec) | Class (Type) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| MIX | 1500 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| INLEV | 1501 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| OUTLEV | 1502 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| DECAY | 1503 | 3 | 300 | CLS_SEC1 |
| x LOW | 1504 | 1 | 250 | CLS_NON2 |
| x LOMID | 1505 | 1 | 200 | CLS_NON2 |
| x HIGH | 1506 | 1 | 200 | CLS_NON2 |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| DIFFUSE | 1507 | 1 | 99 | CLS_NON0 |
| LO-XOVR | 1508 | 0 | 23 | CLS_FRQ0 |


| LM-XOVR | 1509 | 10 | 25 | CLS_FRQ0 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| HI-XOVR | 150 A | 20 | 30 | CLS_FRQ0 |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| PREDLY | 150B | 1 | 200 | CLS_MS1 |
| DISTANS | 150C | 0 | 15 | CLS_NON0 |
| HICUT | 150 D | 14 | 30 | CLS_FRQ0 |
| ATT | 150 E | 20 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| MODRATE | 150 F | 1 | 200 | CLS_NON0 |
| MODDPTH | 1510 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| DIFTYPE | 1511 | 0 | 4 | CLS_DIFF0 |

### 3.3 NONLIN-1

| Parameter-name | ID (Hex) | Min (Dec) | Max (Dec) | Class (Type) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| MIX | 1600 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| INLEV | 1601 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| OUTLEV | 1602 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| PREDLY | 1603 | 0 | 500 | CLS_MS0 |
| ATTACK | 1604 | 0 | 500 | CLS_MS0 |
| HOLD | 1605 | 10 | 500 | CLS_MS0 |
| RELEASE | 1606 | 0 | 500 | CLS_MS0 |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| LOCUT | 1607 | 0 | 20 | CLS_FRQ0 |
| HICUT | 1608 | 16 | 30 | CLS_FRQ0 |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| DIFFUSE | 1609 | 0 | 25 | CLS_NON0 |
| PREDIFF | 160 A | 0 | 100 | CLS_NON0 |
| DIFTYPE | 160 B | 0 | 3 | CLS_PREDIFF |
| WIDTH | 160 C | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |

### 3.4 CHORUS-1

| Parameter-name | ID (Hex) | Min (Dec) | Max (Dec) | Class (Type) |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| MIX | 1100 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |  |
| INLEV | 1101 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |  |
| OUTLEV | 1102 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |  |
| PHASE | 1103 | 0 | 2 | CLS_PHASE1 |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| DELAY | 1104 | 1 | 670 | CLS_MS0 |  |
| FB | 1105 | 0 | 99 | CLS_PERCENT |  |
| SPEED | 1106 | 0 | 40 | CLS_SPEEDS0 |  |
| DEPTH | 1107 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| FBLOCUT | 1108 | 0 | 4 | CLS_LOCUTS |  |
| FBHICUT | 1109 | 0 | 4 | CLS_HICUTS |  |
| HICUT | 110 A | 14 | 30 | CLS_FRQ0 |  |
| ATT | 110 B | 20 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |  |

### 3.5 DELAY-1

| Parameter-name | ID (Hex) | Min (Dec) | Max (Dec) | Class (Type) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| MIX | 1200 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| INLEV | 1201 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| OUTLEV | 1202 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| LDELAY | 1203 | 1 | 670 | CLS_MS0 |
| RDELAY | 1204 | 1 | 670 | CLS_MS0 |
| FB | 1205 | 0 | 99 | CLS_PERCENT |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| FBLOCUT | 1206 | 0 | 4 | CLS_LOCUTS |
| FBHICUT | 1207 | 0 | 4 | CLS_HICUTS |
| HICUT | 1208 | 14 | 30 | CLS_FRQ0 |
| ATT | 1209 | 20 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |

### 3.6 DELAY-2

| Parameter-name | ID (Hex) | Min (Dec) | Max (Dec) | Class (Type) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| MIX | 1300 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| INLEV | 1301 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| OUTLEV | 1302 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| DELAY1 | 1303 | 1 | 670 | CLS_MS0 |
| DELAY2 | 1304 | 1 | 670 | CLS_MS0 |
| HICUT | 1305 | 14 | 30 | CLS_FRQ0 |
| ATT | 1306 | 20 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| LEVEL1 | 1307 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| PAN1 | 1308 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PANL |
| LEVEL2 | 1309 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| PAN2 | 130 A | 0 | 100 | CLS_PANR |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| SPEED | $130 B$ | 0 | 40 | CLS_SPEEDS0 |
| DEPTH | 130 C | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| PHASE | 130 D | 0 | 2 | CLS_PHASE1 |
| INV-PAN | 130 E | 0 | 1 | CLS_ONOFF |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| FB1 | 130 F | -100 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| FB2 | 1310 | -100 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| XFB12 | 1311 | -100 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| XFB21 | 1312 | -100 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| LOFB | 1313 | 20 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| HIFB | 1314 | 20 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| LOXOVR | 1315 | 0 | 30 | CLS_FRQ0 |
| HIXOVR | 1316 | 0 | 30 | CLR_FRQ0 |

### 3.7 REVPITCH

| Parameter-name | ID (Hex) | Min (Dec) | Max (Dec) | Class (Type) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| MIX | 1700 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| INLEV | 1701 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| OUTLEV | 1702 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| PITCH1 | 1703 | -12 | 12 | CLS_NON0 |
| FINE1 | 1704 | -50 | 50 | CLS_NON0 |
| PITCH2 | 1705 | -12 | 12 | CLS_NON0 |
| FINE2 | 1706 | -50 | 50 | CLS_NON0 |
| LEVEL1 | 1707 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| PAN1 | 1708 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PANL |
| LEVEL2 | 1709 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| PAN2 | 170A | 0 | 100 | CLS_PANR |
| HICUT1 | 170B | 14 | 30 | CLS_FRQ0 |
| ATT1 | 170C | 20 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| HICUT2 | 170D | 14 | 30 | CLS_FRQ0 |
| ATT2 | 170E | 20 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| FB1 | 170F | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| FB2 | 1710 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| XFB12 | 1711 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| XFB21 | 1712 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| AMBMIX | 1713 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| PREDLY | 1714 | 0 | 1500 | CLS_MS1 |
| SHAPE | 1715 | 0 | 6 | CLS_SHAPE0 |
| SIZE | 1716 | 0 | 20 | CLS_SIZE0 |
| PITCDLY | 1717 | 10 | 40 | CLS_MS0 |
| PITCCFT | 1718 | 5 | 100 | CLS_NON0 |

### 3.8 PITCH-1

| Parameter-name | ID (Hex) | Min (Dec) | Max (Dec) | Class (Type) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| MIX | 1800 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| INLEV | 1801 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| OUTLEV | 1802 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| PITCH1 | 1803 | -12 | 12 | CLS_NON0 |
| FINE1 | 1804 | -1200 | 1200 | CLS_NON0 |
| PITCH2 | 1805 | -12 | 12 | CLS_NON0 |
| FINE2 | 1806 | -1200 | 1200 | CLS_NON0 |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| LEVEL1 | 1807 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| PAN1 | 1808 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PANL |
| LEVEL2 | 1809 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| PAN2 | $180 A$ | 0 | 100 | CLS_PANR |


| HICUT1 | 180B | 14 | 30 | CLS_FRQ0 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| ATT1 | 180 C | 20 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| HICUT2 | 180D | 14 | 30 | CLS_FRQ0 |
| ATT2 | 180 E | 20 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| FB1 | 180 F | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| FB2 | 1810 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| XFB12 | 1811 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| XFB21 | 1812 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| DELAY1 | 1813 | 0 | 310 | CLS_MS0 |
| DELAY2 | 1814 | 0 | 310 | CLS_MS0 |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| DGSPEED | 1815 | 5 | 50 | CLS_NON2 |
| POLYSPD | 1816 | 5 | 50 | CLS_NON0 |
| POLYDLY | 1817 | 5 | 18 | CLS_NON0 |
| DGFILT | 1818 | 0 | 3 | CLS_DGFILTS |

### 3.9 PITCH-2

| Parameter-name | ID (Hex) | Min (Dec) | Max (Dec) | Class (Type) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| MIX | 1900 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| INLEV | 1901 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| OUTLEV | 1902 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| PITCH | 1903 | -12 | 12 | CLS_NON0 |
| FINE | 1904 | -1200 | 1200 | CLS_NON0 |
| FB | 1905 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| DELAY | 1906 | 0 | 310 | CLS_MS0 |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| HICUT | 1907 | 14 | 30 | CLS_FRQ0 |
| ATT | 1908 | 20 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| DGSPEED | 1909 | 5 | 50 | CLS_NON2 |
| POLYSPD | $190 A$ | 5 | 50 | CLS_NON0 |
| POLYDLY | $190 B$ | 5 | 18 | CLS_NON0 |
| DGFILT | 190 C | 0 | 3 | CLS_DGFILTS |

### 3.10 TAPFAC-1

| Parameter-name | ID (Hex) | Min (Dec) | Max (Dec) | Class (Type) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| MIX | 1B00 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| INLEV | 1B01 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| OUTLEV | 1B02 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| SCALE | 1B03 | 1 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| PREDLY | 1B04 | 0 | 1000 | CLS_MS0 |
| WIDTH | 1B05 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| LASTTAP | 1B06 | 1 | 18 | CLS_NON0 |
| CURTAP | 1B07 | 1 | 18 | CLS_NON0 |


| DELAY1 | 1B08 | 0 | 6230 | CLS_MS0 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| DELAY2 | 1B09 | 0 | 6230 | CLS_MS0 |
| DELAY3 | 1B0A | 0 | 6230 | CLS_MS0 |
| DELAY4 | 1B0B | 0 | 6230 | CLS_MS0 |
| DELAY5 | 1B0C | 0 | 6230 | CLS_MS0 |
| DELAY6 | 1B0D | 0 | 6230 | CLS_MS0 |
| DELAY7 | 1B0E | 0 | 6230 | CLS_MS0 |
| DELAY8 | 1B0F | 0 | 6230 | CLS_MS0 |
| DELAY9 | 1B10 | 0 | 6230 | CLS_MS0 |
| DELAY10 | 1B11 | 0 | 6230 | CLS_MS0 |
| DELAY11 | 1B12 | 0 | 6230 | CLS_MS0 |
| DELAY12 | 1B13 | 0 | 6230 | CLS_MS0 |
| DELAY13 | 1B14 | 0 | 6230 | CLS_MS0 |
| DELAY14 | 1B15 | 0 | 6230 | CLS_MS0 |
| DELAY15 | 1B16 | 0 | 6230 | CLS_MS0 |
| DELAY16 | 1B17 | 0 | 6230 | CLS_MS0 |
| DELAY17 | 1B18 | 0 | 6230 | CLS_MS0 |
| DELAY18 | 1B19 | 0 | 6230 | CLS_MS0 |
| LEVEL1 | 1B1A | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| LEVEL2 | 1B1B | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| LEVEL3 | 1B1C | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| LEVEL4 | 1B1D | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| LEVEL5 | 1B1E | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| LEVEL6 | 1B1F | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| LEVEL7 | 1B20 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| LEVEL8 | 1B21 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| LEVEL9 | 1B22 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| LEVEL10 | 1B23 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| LEVEL11 | 1B24 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| LEVEL12 | 1B25 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| LEVEL13 | 1B26 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| LEVEL14 | 1B27 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| LEVEL15 | 1B28 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| LEVEL16 | 1B29 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| LEVEL17 | 1B2A | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| LEVEL18 | 1B2B | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| PAN1 | 1B2C | 0 | 20 | CLS_PANG |
| PAN2 | 1B2D | 0 | 20 | CLS_PANG |
| PAN3 | 1B2E | 0 | 20 | CLS_PANG |
| PAN4 | 1B2F | 0 | 20 | CLS_PANG |
| PAN5 | 1B30 | 0 | 20 | CLS_PANG |
| PAN6 | 1B31 | 0 | 20 | CLS_PANG |
| PAN7 | 1B32 | 0 | 20 | CLS_PANG |
| PAN8 | 1B33 | 0 | 20 | CLS_PANG |
| PAN9 | 1B34 | 0 | 20 | CLS_PANG |
| PAN10 | 1B35 | 0 | 20 | CLS_PANG |
| PAN11 | 1B36 | 0 | 20 | CLS_PANG |
| PAN12 | 1B37 | 0 | 20 | CLS_PANG |
| PAN13 | 1B38 | 0 | 20 | CLS_PANG |
| PAN14 | 1B39 | 0 | 20 | CLS_PANG |
| PAN15 | 1B3A | 0 | 20 | CLS_PANG |
| PAN16 | 1B3B | 0 | 20 | CLS_PANG |
| PAN17 | 1B3C | 0 | 20 | CLS_PANG |
| PAN18 | 1B3D | 0 | 20 | CLS_PANG |


| LOCUT | 1B3E | 0 | 17 | CLS_FRQ0 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| LOATT | 1B3F | 20 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| HICUT | 1B40 | 17 | 30 | CLS_FRQ0 |
| HIATT | 1B41 | 20 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| SPEED | $1 B 42$ | 0 | 40 | CLS_SPEEDS0 |
| DEPTH | $1 B 43$ | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |

### 3.11 AMBIENCE

| Parameter-name | ID (Hex) | Min (Dec) | Max (Dec) | Class (Type) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| MIX | 1C00 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| INLEV | 1C01 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| OUTLEV | 1C02 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| SHAPE | 1C03 | 0 | 5 | CLS_SHAPE0 |
| SIZE | 1 C 04 | 0 | 20 | CLS_SIZE0 |
| PREDLY | 1C05 | 0 | 1000 | CLS_MS1 |
| WIDTH | 1C06 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| LOCUT | 1C07 | 0 | 17 | CLS_FRQ0 |
| LOATT | 1C08 | 20 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| HICUT | 1C09 | 17 | 30 | CLS_FRQ0 |
| HIATT | 1C0A | 20 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| SPEED | 1C0B | 0 | 40 | CLS_SPEEDS0 |
| DEPTH | 1C0C | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| PDLYMUL | 1C0D | 0 | 1 | CLS_DLYMUL |

### 3.12 DYNAMIC1

|  | Parameter-name | ID (Hex) | Min (Dec) | Max (Dec) | Class (Type) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | MIX | 1A00 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
|  | INLEV | 1A01 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
|  | OUTLEV | 1A02 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
|  | BALANCE | 1A03 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PANL |
|  | LOWCUT | 1A04 | 0 | 21 | CLS_FRQ1 |
|  | LMXOVR | 1A05 | 0 | 29 | CLS_FRQ2 |
|  | MHXOVR | 1A06 | 0 | 29 | CLS_FRQ3 |
|  | SOFTCLIP | 1A07 | 0 | 1 | CLS_ONOFF |
| Low Section $\longrightarrow$ | COMTHR | 1A08 | 13 | 124 | CLS_DB1 |
|  | COMRATIO | 1A09 | 0 | 15 | CLS_RATIO1 |
|  | COMATCK | 1A0A | 0 | 15 | CLS_DYNATCK |
|  | COMREL | 1A0B | 0 | 15 | CLS_DYNDEC |
|  | LIMTHR | 1A0C | 76 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
|  | LIMRATIO | 1A0D | 0 | 1 | CLS_RATIO3 |
|  | LIMATCK | 1A0E | 0 | 15 | CLS_LIMATCK |
|  | LIMREL | 1A0F | 0 | 15 | CLS_DYNDEC |


|  | EXPTHR | 1 A 10 | 2 | 100 | CLS_CLS_DB1 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | EXPRATIO | 1A11 | 0 | 15 | CLS_RATİO2 |
|  | EXPATCK | 1A12 | 0 | 15 | CLS_DYNATCK |
|  | EXPREL | 1A13 | 0 | 15 | CLS_DYNDEC |
|  | EXPRANGE | 1A14 | 20 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
|  | LEVEL | 1A15 | 63 | 124 | CLS_DB1OFF18 |
|  | CREST | 1A16 | 0 | 8 | CLS_CREST |
|  | DELAY | 1A17 | 0 | 250 | CLS_MS1 |
|  | LIMDLY | 1A18 | 0 | 250 | CLS_MS1 |
|  | SFTKNEE | 1A19 | 0 | 1 | CLS_ONOFF |
|  | METERS | 1A1A | 0 | 5 | CLS_MTRRES |
|  | REF0DB | 1A1B | 64 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| Mid Section $\longrightarrow$ | COMTHR | 1A1C | 13 | 124 | CLS_DB1 |
|  | COMRATIO | 1A1D | 0 | 15 | CLS_RATIO1 |
|  | COMATCK | 1A1E | 0 | 15 | CLS_DYNATCK |
|  | COMREL | 1A1F | 0 | 15 | CLS_DYNDEC |
|  | LIMTHR | 1A20 | 76 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
|  | LIMRATIO | 1A21 | 0 | 1 | CLS_RATIO3 |
|  | LIMATCK | 1 A 22 | 0 | 15 | CLS_LIMATCK |
|  | LIMREL | 1A23 | 0 | 15 | CLS_DYNDEC |
|  | EXPTHR | 1A24 | 2 | 100 | CLS_CLS_DB1 |
|  | EXPRATIO | 1A25 | 0 | 15 | CLS_RATIO2 |
|  | EXPATCK | 1A26 | 0 | 15 | CLS_DYNATCK |
|  | EXPREL | 1A27 | 0 | 15 | CLS_DYNDEC |
|  | EXPRANGE | 1A28 | 20 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
|  | LEVEL | 1A29 | 63 | 124 | CLS_DB1OFF18 |
|  | CREST | 1A2A | 0 | 8 | CLS_CREST |
|  | DELAY | 1A2B | 0 | 250 | CLS_MS1 |
|  | LIMDLY | 1A2C | 0 | 250 | CLS_MS1 |
|  | SFTKNEE | 1A2D | 0 | 1 | CLS_ONOFF |
|  | METERS | 1A2E | 0 | 5 | CLS_MTRRES |
|  | REF0DB | 1A2F | 64 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| High Section $\longrightarrow$ | COMTHR | 1 A 30 | 13 | 124 | CLS_DB1 |
|  | COMRATIO | 1A31 | 0 | 15 | CLS_RATIO1 |
|  | COMATCK | 1A32 | 0 | 15 | CLS_DYNATCK |
|  | COMREL | 1A33 | 0 | 15 | CLS_DYNDEC |
|  | LIMTHR | 1A34 | 76 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
|  | LIMRATIO | 1A35 | 0 | 1 | CLS_RATIO3 |
|  | LIMATCK | 1A36 | 0 | 15 | CLS_LIMATCK |
|  | LIMREL | 1 A37 | 0 | 15 | CLS_DYNDEC |
|  | EXPTHR | 1A38 | 2 | 100 | CLS_CLS_DB1 |
|  | EXPRATIO | 1A39 | 0 | 15 | CLS_RATIO2 |
|  | EXPATCK | 1A3A | 0 | 15 | CLS_DYNATCK |
|  | EXPREL | 1A3B | 0 | 15 | CLS_DYNDEC |
|  | EXPRANGE | 1A3C | 20 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
|  | LEVEL | 1A3D | 63 | 124 | CLS_DB1OFF18 |
|  | CREST | 1A3E | 0 | 8 | CLS_CREST |
|  | DELAY | 1A3F | 0 | 250 | CLS_MS1 |
|  | LIMDLY | 1A40 | 0 | 250 | CLS_MS1 |
|  | SFTKNEE | 1A41 | 0 | 1 | CLS_ONOFF |
|  | METERS | 1A42 | 0 | 5 | CLS_MTRRES |
|  | REF0DB | 1A43 | 64 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| Other $\longrightarrow$ | PARLNK | 1A44 | 0 | 1 | CLS_ONOFF |
| Parameters | NOMDELAY | 1A45 | 0 | 250 | CLS_MS1 |


| LEV PAGE | 1A46 | 0 | 2 | CLS_CLEVPG |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| COM PAGE | 1A47 | 0 | 6 | CLS_CCOMPG |
| LIM PAGE | 1A48 | 0 | 4 | CLS_CLIMPG |
| EXP PAGE | 1A49 | 0 | 4 | CLS_CEXPPG |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| LOW METER $\boldsymbol{4}$ | 1A4A | -32767 | 32767 | CLS_COMMTR |
| MID METER | 1A4B | -32767 | 32767 | CLS_COMMTR |
| HIGH METER \& | 1A4C | -32767 | 32767 | CLS_COMMTR |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| LGAIN $\boldsymbol{M}$ | 1A4D | 0 | 124 | CLS_DBF1 |
| MGAIN \& | 1A4E | 0 | 124 | CLS_DBF1 |
| HGAIN | 1A4F | 0 | 124 | CLS_DBF1 |

Parameters marked with a Fejl! Henvisningskilde ikke fundet. are only used for internal front-panel operations within the M5000 and have no effect on the audio-signal.
Parameters marked with a Fejl! Henvisningskilde ikke fundet. are read-only. Setting their value has no effect.

### 3.12.1 Meters

The Low, Mid and High meters indicate compression, expansion and limiting. The meters must be polled manually by your software. The M5000 makes sure that you always receive the highest value since the last poll (or lowest, if the expander is active), so all you have to do is poll the meters and display the bargraph. The M5000 is ready with new meter-settings 25 times a second, although you may choose to poll at a lower rate. It is recommended that you poll all 3 meters with the same request-packet in order to minimize MIDI-traffic.

The M5000 supplies you with information to display a meter that looks exactly like the meter on the M5000 display. The meter is 21 segments wide with a center at bar \#11. Expansion causes the meter to move left, while compression causes the meter to move right. Limiting causes a dot to appear in the rightmost corner of the meter. Compression and expansion are mutually exclusive, and thus never happen simultaneously:


The M5000 scales the meters according to the METER-resolution for each band (eg. Par \#\$1A1A for the low band). Don't confuse this parameter with the actual METER-readout (eg. \$1A4A for the low band). If the meter-resolution is set to 5 dB , then the compression section of the meter shows 5 dB of compression, and the expansion section shows 5 dB of expansion. See section 0 for a description of how the Meter-resolution parameters affect each other.

### 3.12.2 Meter Code-Example

The METER-readout parameter contains all necessary information on how to draw the meter. The limiter-dot is stored in the sign-bit (bit 15 , if you've converted the parameter-value to a C-type short). You must first extract this bit and mask it off, before calculating the meters.
The compression meter moves in the range 0 up to 127 , and the expansion meter moves in the range 256 down to 128 . You should only display the first 10 segments in each range. An inactive meter is signified with a compression of 0 .

The following demo-code gives a general outline of the decoding process:

```
#define NOTHING -1
short compression = NOTHING;
short expansion = NOTHING;
short limiting = FALSE;
short masked;
// Parameter-value is passed in 'value'
if (value & 0x8000)
    limiting = TRUE;
masked = value & 0xff;
if (masked < 128)
{
    compression = masked;
    if (compression > 10) compression = 10;
}
else
{
    expansion = 256 - masked;
    if (expansion > 10) expansion = 10;
}
if (compression != NOTHING)
    // Draw compression
if (expansion != NOTHING)
    // Draw expansion
if (limiting)
    // Draw limiting
```


### 3.12.3 Mutual Dependencies

- LMXOVR must never be higher than MHXOVR.
- MHXOVR must never be lower than LMXOVR.
- METERS (Meter-resolution) for each band are hard-linked, meaning that they will always contain the same value. You should only choose to display and manipulate one of the parameters (fx. METERS - Low Band).
- ODBREF follows the same principle as METERS.

In each of the bands, the thresholds of the compressor and expander limit each other. The following criteria must be met for each of the bands:

- Compressor-threshold must never be lower than Expander-threshold.
- Expander-threshold must never be higher than Compressor-threshold.


### 3.13 TOOLBOX

| Parameter-name | ID (Hex) | Min (Dec) | Max (Dec) | Class (Type) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| MIX | 1d00 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| INLEV | 1d01 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| OUTLEV | 1d02 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |


| INS-ON | 1 d 03 | 0 | 1 | CLS_ONOFF |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| BALANCE | 1 d 04 | -30 | 30 | CLS_DBF1 |
| MONO | 1 d 05 | 0 | 100 | CLS_PERCENT |
| LRSWAP | 1 d 06 | 0 | 1 | CLS_ONOFF |
| PHASE | 1 d 07 | 0 | 2 | CLS_LRPHASE |
| DITHER | 1 d 08 | 0 | 3 | CLS_DITHER |
| DITHER-TYPE | 1 d 09 | 0 | 2 | CLS_DITTYP |
| MS-IN | 1d0a | -180 | 180 | CLS_MSANGLE |
| MS-OUT | 1d0b | -180 | 180 | CLS_MSANGLE |
| FADECURVE | 1d0c | 0 | 1 | CLS_MFC |
| FADER | 1d0d | -80 | 0 | CLS_DBF0 |
| METER | 1d0e | 0 | 1 | CLS_INOUT |
| RANGE | 1 d 0 f | 0 | 2 | CLS_MRNGE |
| TICKS | 1 d 10 | 0 | 3 | CLS_MTICKS |
| HOLD | 1d11 | 0 | 2 | CLS_MHOLD |
| LDELAY | 1 d 12 | 0 | 3000 | CLS_MS1 |
| RDELAY | 1 d 13 | 0 | 3000 | CLS_MS1 |
| EQTYPE1 | 1d14 | 0 | 3 | CLS_EQTYPE |
| EQFREQ1 | 1d15 | 0 | 192 | CLS_EQFREQ |
| PWIDTH1 | 1 d 16 | 0 | 16 | CLS_WIDTH0 |
| NWIDTH1 | 1 d 17 | 0 | 16 | CLS_WIDTH1 |
| SSLOPE1 | 1 d 18 | 0 | 3 | CLS_SLOPE0 |
| CSLOPE1 | 1 d 19 | 0 | 1 | CLS_SLOPE1 |
| PGAIN1 | 1d1a | -120 | 120 | CLS_DBF1 |
| NGAIN1 | 1d1b | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| SGAIN1 | 1d1c | -120 | 120 | CLS_DBF1 |
| EQON1 | 1d1d | 0 | 1 | CLS_ONOFF |
| EQTYPE2 | 1d1e | 0 | 1 | CLS_EQTYPE |
| EQFREQ2 | 1d1f | 0 | 240 | CLS_EQFREQ |
| PWIDTH2 | 1d20 | 0 | 16 | CLS_WIDTH0 |
| NWIDTH2 | 1d21 | 0 | 16 | CLS_WIDTH1 |
| PGAIN2 | 1d22 | -120 | 120 | CLS_DBF1 |
| NGAIN2 | 1 d 23 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| EQON2 | 1d24 | 0 | 1 | CLS_ONOFF |
| EQTYPE3 | 1d25 | 0 | 1 | CLS_EQTYPE |
| EQFREQ3 | 1d26 | 0 | 240 | CLS_EQFREQ |
| PWIDTH3 | 1d27 | 0 | 16 | CLS_WIDTH0 |
| NWIDTH3 | 1d28 | 0 | 16 | CLS_WIDTH1 |
| PGAIN3 | 1d29 | -120 | 120 | CLS_DBF1 |
| NGAIN3 | 1d2a | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| EQON3 | 1d2b | 0 | 1 | CLS_ONOFF |
| EQTYPE4 | 1d2c | 0 | 3 | CLS_EQTYPE |
| EQFREQ4 | 1d2d | 112 | 240 | CLS_EQFREQ |
| PWIDTH4 | 1d2e | 0 | 16 | CLS_WIDTH0 |
| NWIDTH4 | 1d2f | 0 | 16 | CLS_WIDTH1 |
| SSLOPE4 | 1d30 | 0 | 3 | CLS_SLOPE0 |
| CSLOPE4 | 1d31 | 0 | 1 | CLS_SLOPE1 |
| PGAIN4 | 1d32 | -120 | 120 | CLS_DBF1 |
| NGAIN4 | 1d33 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| SGAIN4 | 1d34 | -120 | 120 | CLS_DBF1 |
| EQON4 | 1d35 | 0 | 1 | CLS_ONOFF |


| L LPPM | 1 d 36 | -32768 | 32767 | CLS_PPM72 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| R RPPM | 1 d 37 | -32768 | 32767 | CLS_PPM72 |
| \& PHASE-CORR | 1 d 38 | -32768 | 32767 | CLS_BAR72 |

Parameters marked with are read-only. Setting their value has no effect. If you wish to display the VU-meters, you should not use the local meters in this algorithm (LPPM and RPPM). A TOOLBOX algorithm has front-panel VU-meters as any other algorithm. If you use those, you only need to write one routine to display meters.

### 3.13.1 Special Considerations

Each of the bands in the TOOLBOX can be set to a number of equalizer-types. The Low and High bands have 4 selections, while the two Mid bands have only 2 selections. Each type of equalizer has it's own set of unique associated parameters. For example, a Shelve-type has a Slope-parameter, while a Parametric-type has a Width-parameter. As a product of this, the Low-band has 10 parameters, although not all of them are used at the same time. In the M5000, the display is swapped, to show only the relevant parameters. If the Parametric-type parameters are shown on screen, the Shelve-type parameters still exist as seperate identities, although they have no immediate function and aren't displayed. You will need to accomodate for this.

For each band, the EQTYPE, EQFREQ and EQON parameters stay fixed (meaning that they aren't swapped). The rest of the parameters for each band (Width/Slope and Level) are swapped. Please refer to the M5000 front-panel, to see how this works. If possible, you should retain this scheme as opposed to physically changing the type of objects in your software application.

## 4 System-Parameters

### 4.1 Overview

System-parameters are parameters just like algorithm-parameters except that they apply to the DSPcard as such or perhaps to the entire M5000 frame. Each slot has it's own standard set of parameters, such as Bypass, but care must be taken, because the parameters have the same numbers in all the slots. It is the slot\# that distinguishes between the parameters, not the actual parameter-number.

### 4.2 System-Parameters

| Parameter-name | ID (Hex) | Min (Dec) | Max (Dec) | Class (Type) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| SYSMIXMODE | 0100 | 0 | 2 | CLS_MIXMODE |
| SYSBYPASS | 0101 | 0 | 1 | CLS_ONOFF |
| SYSGIN | 0102 | 0 | 100 | CLS_DB1 |
| SYSCHANMODE | 0103 | 0 | 3 | CLS_CHNLMODE |
| SYSPHASE | 0104 | 0 | 1 | CLS_POSNEG |
| SYSIOMODE | 0105 | (See |  | CLS_IOMODE |
| \& SYSCURRATE | 0108 | Section |  |  |
| SYSMCLOCK | 0109 | 0 |  |  |
| SYSAIN | 010 a | -12 | 12 | CLS_DBF0??? |
| SYSAOUT | 010 b | -18 | 12 | CLS_DBF0??? |
| \& SYSLOCKSTAT | 010 c | 0 | 1 | CLS_ONOFF |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| SYSMETERSHOW | 0110 | 0 | 1 | CLS_INOUT |
| SYSDOTYPE | 0111 | 0 | 2 |  |
| SYSDOCPY | 0112 | 0 | 2 | CLS_DOTYPE |
| SYSDADEMP | 0113 | 0 | 1 | CLS_DOCPY |
| SYSR68LEV | 0114 | 0 | 1 | CLS_ONOFF |
| SYSFSTTRIG | 0115 | 0 | 1 | CLS_ONOFF |
|  |  |  |  | CLS_ONOFF |
| SYSMETERL | 0401 |  |  | See section 0 |
| SYSMETERR | 0402 |  |  |  |

Parameters marked with are read-only.

### 4.3 VU-Meters

Even though the M5000 front-panel VU-meters only have 10 segments, the meter-information is in fact far more detailed. The SYSMETERL and SYSMETERR parameters contain the actual meterreadout in $1 / 8 \mathrm{~dB}$ steps, which is why steps must be taken to produce a useable meter.

### 4.3.1 Communication

The meters must be polled manually by your software at $1 / 25$ second intervals. You may choose to poll at a lower rate, although a higher rate won't result in any improvement. It is recommended that you poll both the left- and right meters in the same request-packet in order to minimize MIDI-traffic.

The M5000 cannot guarantee to reply with the meters in the same packet, although the packets will be very close in time. For this reason, your software should be able to handle the left- and right channels separately.

### 4.3.2 Calculations

Some bits of SYSMETERL and SYSMETERR are reserved, so you should AND with 0x03ff before processing.

The meter-reply contains the actual meter position in $1 / 8 \mathrm{~dB}$ steps. A value of 0 means peak, while a value of 1 means $-1 / 8 \mathrm{~dB}$ and so forth. If you wish to produce a meter that shows the amplitude in whole dB steps, simply divide the number by 8 .

The DSP-clip flag is found in bit 13 , which can be accessed by ANDing with 0x2000. This flag has a built-in timeout, so all you need to do is print it. The M5000 front-panel VU-meters use the 0dB
LED to signal DSP-clipping, but this information should be printed separately wherever possible.

### 4.4 Hardware-Specific Parameter Ranges

Some parameters have ranges that depend on the physical DSP-card configuration.

## 5 Preset-Handling

### 5.1 Overview

The M5000 preset-handling facilities allow you to request information about presets (including editbuffers) as well as transfer presets to/from the M5000. A convenient way of recalling presets via Sysex is also offered.

### 5.2 Conversions And IDs

A few new data-types are introduced for preset-transfers:

### 5.2.1 Preset-numbers

When a preset is referred to, it's number and bank is included in the Preset\#. A Preset\# is always spread over 2 bytes as an unsigned short and is combined/derived with the same methods as used for parameter-numbers.

In the C programming-language, the Preset\# is calculated as follows:

```
presetNumber = number + (bank << 12);
```

where bank is one of the following:

```
0: Current Preset (Edit Buffer)
1: ROM
2: RAM
3: FILE
```


### 5.2.2 Algorithm-IDs

Each type of DSP-algorithm has a unique ID:

```
1 REVERB1
2 CHORUS
R REVPITCH
R REVERB2
5 NONLIN1
DELAY1
7 PITCH1
PITCH2
DELAY2
10 REVERB3
11 SAMPLER
12 AMBIENCE
13 TAPFAC1
14 DYNAMIC1
15 TOOLBOX
16 PAREQ
17 CORE
```


### 5.2.3 Preset-Names

Preset-names are always 8 ASCII-characters long with the unused character-places padded with spaces.

### 5.3 Preset Information

The following request-message allows you to request information about a preset or the edit-buffer:

```
Sysex-start $f0
TC ID
Device#
Card#
Packet-type
<Preset#>
Sysex-end $f7
$33
xx
    Unused, unless edit-buffer is requested
    $03 - Request Preset Info
    Preset#
```

The M5000 will reply with the following:

```
Sysex-start $f0
TC ID
    $33
Device# xx
Card# Unused, unless edit-buffer is replied
Packet-type $05 - Preset Info
<Name>
<Preset#>
<Byte>
<Byte>
Sysex-end
    $f7
```


### 5.4 Recall Preset

This dump allows you to recall presets along the same path as the rest of your Sysexcommunications:

```
Sysex-start $f0
TC ID $3
Device# xx
Card#
Packet-type $02 - Recall Preset
<Preset#> Preset#
Sysex-end $f7
```

Please note, that if the M5000 front-panel is showing the program-recall page, the Preset\# will start flashing, because the preset you are in the process of recalling via the M5000 front-panel no longer is the current preset (because of this Sysex-dump).

## 6 C Programming-Interface

### 6.1 Overview

The C programming-interface is provided as a means to display the correct value for any given type of parameter. Without this interface, you would have to create all tables and conversions yourself in order to display the value of all parameters.

The interface consists of 2 files, CLASS.C and CLASS.H, which can be downloaded from the TC User-Club BBS. The phone-numbers are listed in the beginning of this manual.

### 6.2 Using The Interface

The interface is platform-independent and only requires the ANSI Standard Libraries stdio, string and math to be present.

The only routine you need to call is this:

```
void class_GetStr (char *s, WORD idClass, short v);
```

where $s$ is an array of 7 chars to receive the string, idClass is the class-number as found in the algorithm-listings and v is the value.

Keep in mind that the string isn't automatically null-terminated. You can null-terminate the string by providing an 8-character string to class_getStr and then setting the 8th character to 0 .

Because this code is taken directly from the M5000 application-software, the result is always printed as a 7-character string which is padded with spaces. You are free to modify the code to display the parameter-text in a less short-hand way, but keep in mind that the CLASS.C and CLASS.H files probably will be updated in the future to support new algorithms. Your CLASS.C and CLASS.H files will always remain compatible with existing algorithms, but if you would like to support new algorithms, you must either make all your modifications again or add the new parameter-types by hand.

Always make sure that the string you provide to class_getStr is large enough to contain the reply.

A few of the classes are irrelevant to most applications, but they have been left in the interface to simplify the process of providing it. You should not use classes such as CLS_BAR72, because their character-string reply requires custom-characters that are only available in the M5000.


[^0]:    MAINFR. INTRO M5INTRO

    Rev 1.0 Page 2

[^1]:    GEN. INSTR.

[^2]:    GEN. INSTR.

[^3]:    * Has no influence if DSP-2 is installed.

[^4]:    GEN. INSTR.

[^5]:    GEN. INSTR.

[^6]:    ${ }^{1}$ Only if idx RAM mounted is 64 K . If idx $=32 \mathrm{~K}$ max predelay will be 200.0 mS . Check your index ram in the CONFIG menu under UTILITY.

[^7]:    ${ }^{2}$ Only if idx RAM mounted is 64 K . Check your index ram in the CONFIG menu under UTILITY.

[^8]:    ${ }^{3}$ Only if idx RAM mounted is 64 K . If idx $=32 \mathrm{~K}$ max predelay will be 200.0 mS . Check your index ram in the CONFIG menu under UTILITY.

[^9]:    ${ }^{5}$ Only if idx RAM mounted is 64 K . If idx $=32 \mathrm{~K}$, max predelay will be 150 mS . M5000 automatically checks your hardware on power up and uses the available amount. The index ram size can be seen in the CONFIG menu under UTILITY.

[^10]:    ${ }^{6}$ If high memory is installed ( $\mathrm{Idx}=64 \mathrm{~K}$ check your index memory under UTILITY menu CONFIG) max. delay time is 1.36 Sec., otherwise max. delay time is 670 mS . (Idx=32K).

[^11]:    ${ }^{7}$ If high memory is installed ( $\mathrm{Idx}=64 \mathrm{~K}$ check your index memory under UTILITY menu CONFIG) max. delay time is 1.36 Sec., otherwise max. delay time is 670 mS . (Idx=32K).

[^12]:    * Not possible if you are running the STANDARD sampler - the parameters are adjustable but do not affect the signal. Simply install SIMM memory and all parameters will be available.

[^13]:    ${ }^{1}$ Co-efficient Optimized Room Emulation

[^14]:    ${ }^{2}$ Only if idx RAM mounted is 64 K . If idx $=32 \mathrm{~K}$ max predelay will be 200.0 mS . Check your index ram in the CONFIG menu under UTILITY.

[^15]:    ${ }^{4}$ Older DSP engines needs the MULTIBUS upgrade. In case of problems please contact your dealer or TC Headoffice in Denmark.

[^16]:    Created by Thomas Olesen, Tom Andersen and Ivar Iversen in FEEDBACK Studio 1+2, Aarhus, Denmark.

[^17]:    ${ }^{1}$ ProAudio Net - A commercial BBS.

